



UNIVERSITY
OF PITTSBURGH
LIBRARY



Oct. 20.
1972
Dove
S.A.
D.L.B.

THIS BOOK IS LOANED BY

THE PRESIDENT

ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE
LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION
1804-1806

WITH FACSIMILES, MAPS, PLANS, VIEWS, PORTRAITS, AND
A BIBLIOGRAPHY

VOLUME ONE

PART II

*Journals and Orderly Book of Lewis and Clark, from
the Vermilion River to Two-Thousand-Mile Creek
Aug. 25, 1804 — May 5, 1805*

*Of this Edition on Imperial Japan Paper
fifty copies only have been printed
of which, this is
No. 30*



ABDIE HINDSCH / *Chief of the ...*



ABDIA HIDDISCH (Chief)

ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE
LEWIS AND CLARK
EXPEDITION

1804-1806

PRINTED FROM THE ORIGINAL MANUSCRIPTS
in the Library of the American Philosophical Society and
by Direction of its committee on Historical Documents

TOGETHER WITH

MANUSCRIPT MATERIAL OF LEWIS AND CLARK
from other sources, including Note-Books, Letters, Maps, etc.,
and the Journals of Charles Floyd and Joseph Whitehouse

NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME PUBLISHED IN FULL
AND EXACTLY AS WRITTEN

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Index, by

REUBEN GOLD THWAITES, LL.D.

Editor of "The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents," etc.

VOLUME ONE

PART II

NEW YORK

DODD, MEAD & COMPANY

1904

Copyright, 1904
BY THE AMERICAN PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY

Copyright, 1904
BY JULIA CLARK VOORHIS
ELEANOR GLASGOW VOORHIS

Copyright, 1904
BY THE STATE HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF WISCONSIN

Copyright, 1904
BY DODD, MEAD & COMPANY

Published July, 1904

THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
CAMBRIDGE, U. S. A.

CONTENTS TO VOL. I

PART II

	PAGE
CHAPTER III. — FROM THE VERMILION TO TETON RIVER	121
Clark's Journal, August 25—September 24, 1804. Entries and Orders by Lewis, August 26, 28, and September 16, 17.	
CHAPTER IV. — FROM TETON RIVER TO THE MANDANS	164
Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25 — October 26, 1804. Order by Lewis, October 13.	
CHAPTER V. — AMONG THE MANDANS	208
Clark's Journal, October 27—December 27, 1804.	
CHAPTER VI. — AMONG THE MANDANS	242
Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 2, 1805; February 13—March 21, 1805. Entries by Lewis, February 3-13 and March 16.	
CHAPTER VII. — FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE	277
Clark's Journal, March 22—April 27, 1805. Lewis's Journal, April 7-27.	
CHAPTER VIII. — FROM THE YELLOWSTONE TO THE MUSSELSHELL (Part I.)	348
Lewis's Journal, April 28—May 5, 1805. Clark's Journal, April 28—May 5.	

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

VOL. I—PART II

Abdih-Hiddisch, a Minatarre Chief	<i>Frontispiece</i>	
	PAGE	
Punka Indians, on the Missouri River		128
Sketch Plan of Fortification		136
Pachtüwa-Chtëä, an Arrikkara Warrior		150
Mändeh-Pähchu, a young Mandan Indian		166
Page from the Orderly Book, signed by both Lewis and Clark		184
A Mandan Village		220
Manuscript Page by Clark, dated Dec. 24, 1804		238
Noàpèh, an Assiniboin Indian		244
War Hatchet (text cut)		251
Battle Axe (text cut)		255
Offering of the Mandan Indians		260
Interior of the Hut of a Mandan Chief		272
Sketch Map by Clark of Red and St. Peters Rivers		286
Dance of Mandan Women		292
Idols of the Mandan Indians		300
Manuscript Page, by Lewis, dated Apr. 18, 1805		306
Dog Sledge of the Mandan Indians		320
Scalp Dance of the Minatarre Indians		336
Winter Village of the Minatarre Indians		352
Junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers		368
Tree Tombs of the Assiniboin Indians		374

CHAPTER III

FROM THE VERMILION TO TETON RIVER

Clark's Journal, August 25-September 24, 1804
 Entries and Orders by Lewis, August 26, 28, and September 16, 17

[Clark:]

25th August Saturday 1804. —

A CLOUDY morning Cap! Lewis & Myself concluded to go and See the Mound which was Viewed with Such terror by all the different Nations in this quarter, we Selected Shields; J. Fields, W. Bratten, Serg! Ordway, J. Coller, Carr, and Corp! Worbington & Frasure, also G. Drewyer and dropped down to the Mouth of White Stone River, where we left the Perogue with two men and at 200 yards we assended a rising ground of about Sixty feet, from the top of this High land the Countrey is leavel & open as far as can be Seen, except Some few rises at a great Distance, and the *Mound* which the Indians Call Mountain of *little people or Spirits*, this Mound appears of a conic form & is N. 20. W. from the mouth of the Creek,¹ we left the river at 8 oClock, at 4 miles we Crossed the Creek 23 yards wide in an extensive Valley and Contin[u]ed on at two miles further our Dog was so Heeted and fatigued we was obliged [to] Send him back to the Creek, at 12 oClock we arrived at the hill Cap! Lewis much fatigued from heat the day it being verry hot & he being in a debilitated State from the Precautions he was obliged to take to prevent the effects of the Cobalt, & Min' Substance which had like to have poisoned him two days ago, his want of water, and Several of the men complaining of Great thirst, determined us to make for the first water which was the Creek

¹ Known locally, and named on some maps, as Spirit Mound. For description of its more recent appearance, see *Amer. Antiquarian*, Sept. 1891, p. 289. — ED.

in a bend N. E. from the Mound, about 3 miles. after a Delay of about 1 hour & a half to recruit our party we set out on our return down the Creek thro: the bottom of about 1 mile in width, crossed the creek 3 times to the place we first struck it, where we gathered some delisious froot such as Grapes, Plumbs, & Blue Currents after a Delay of an hour we set out on our back trail & arrived at the Perogue at Sun set. We proceeded on to the Place we Camp^d last night and Stayed all night.

This Mound is Situated on an elivated plain in a leavel and extensive prarie, bearing N. 20' W. from the Mouth of White Stone Creek *nine* miles, the base of the Mound is a regular parallelagram the long Side of which is about 300 yards in length the Shorter 60 or 70 yards. from the longer Side of the Base it rises from the North & South with a Steep assent to the hight of 65 or 70 feet, leaveing a leavel Plain on the top of 12 feet in width & 90 in length. The North & South part of this Mound is join[ed] by two regular rises, each in Oval forms of half its hight, forming three regular rises from the Plain the assent of each elivated part is as Suden as the principal mound at the narrower sides of its Base.

The reagular form of this hill would in Some measure justify a belief that it owed its orrigin to the hand of man; but as the earth and loos pebbles and other substances of which it was Composed, bore an exact resemblance to the Steep Ground which border on the Creek in its neighbourhood we concluded it was most probably the production of nature.

The only remarkable Characteristic of this hill admiting it to be a natural production is that it is insulated or Seperated a considerable distance from any other, which is verry unusial in the natural order or disposition of the hills.

The Surrounding Plains is open Void of Timber and leavel to a great extent, hence the wind from whatever quarter it may blow, drives with unusial force over the naked Plains and against this hill; the insects of various kinds are thus involuntary driven to the Mound by the force of the wind, or fly to its Leeward Side for Shelter; the Small Birds whoes food they are, Consequently resort in great numbers to this place in

Surch of them; Peticularly the Small brown Martin of which we saw a vast number hovering on the Leward Side of the hill, when we approached it in the act of catching those insects; they were so gentle that they did not quit the place untill we had arriv^d within a few feet of them.

One evidence which the Ind^s give for believing this place to be the residence of Some unusial Sperits is that they frequently discover a large assemblage of Birds about this Mound [this] is in my opinion a Sufficent proof to produce in the Savage Mind a Confident belief of all the properties which they ascribe [to] it.

from the top of this Mound we beheld a most butifull landscape; Numerous herds of buffalow were Seen feeding in various directions; the Plain to North N. W. & N. E. extends without interuption as far as Can be seen.

From the Mound to the Mouth of Stone River is S. 20^o E. 9 Miles. to the woods near the mouth of River Jacque is West. to the Highland near the mouth of Soues River is S. 70^o E. to the highland opposit side or near the Maha Town is S. 45 E.

Some high lands to be seen from the Mound at a Great distance to the N. E. some nearer to the N. W. No woods except on the Missouri Points.

if all the timber which is on the Stone Creek was on 100 acres it would not be thickly timbered, the Soil of those Plains are delightfull.

Great numbers of Birds are seen in those Plains, Such as black bird, ren, [*wren*] or Prarie burd, a kind of larke about the sise of a Partridge with a Short tail, &c., &c.,

25th Aug^r—

the Boat under the Com^d of Serj^t Pryor proceeded on in our absence, (after jurking the Elk I Killed yesterday) Six Miles and Camped on the Larboard Side R. Fields brought in five Deer, George Shannon Killed an Elk Buck Som rain this evening.

We Set the Praries on fire as a signal for the Soues to Come to the River.

Course Dist^s & Refr^s Aug^t 25th

S. 72° W.	1	M ^l on the p ^t on S. S. ops ^d a Bluff of Blue Clay which is on the L. S.
West	½	M ^l on the p ^t S. S. ops ^d the Bluff.
N. 22° E.	3	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of high Willows on the L. S. ops ^d a Sand Island passed a Sand bar on the L. S.
N. 40° W.	1	M ^l on the L. S. ops ^d Sand Island
S. 86° W.	½	m ^l on the L. S. to a p ^t of Willows the camp
	<u>6</u>	

26th August Sunday 1804.—

(Joined the Boat at 9 oClock A.M.) after jurking the meat Killed yesterday and preparing the Elk Skins for a Toe Roape, we Set out Leaveing Drewyer & Shannon to hunt the horses which was lost with directions to follow us keeping on the high lands.

proceeded on passed a clift of White and Blue or Dark Earth of 2 miles in extent on the L. S. and camped on a Sand bar opposed the old village Called *Pitite Arc.* a Small Creek falls into the river 15 yd^s wide below the Village on the Same Side L. S.¹ this Village was built by a Indian Chief of the Maha nation by the name of Petite Arc (or little Bow) displeas^d with the Great Chief of that nation (Black Bird) Seperated with 200 men and built a village at this place after his death the two Villages joined, ap^t Pat. Gass a Serg^t vice Floyd Deceased.

Great q^{ty} of Grapes, Plumbs of three Kinds, 2 yellow and large one of which is long and a 3rd kind round & red all well flavored, perticularly the yellow sort.

Course Distance & refr^s Aug^t 26th

S. 66° W.	2	M ^{ls} to a Sand bar Makeing out from the S. S.
N. 82° W.	7	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of Willows on the S. S. passed an Island on S. S. and large Sand bar on both Sides of the river and Camped opposit the mouth of Arc Creek — the river below wide.
	<u>9</u>	

¹ Now Bow Creek, Cedar Co., Nebr. — Ed.

[Orderly Book; Lewis:]

Orders August 26th 1804.

The commanding officers have thought proper to appoint Patric Gass, a Sergeant in *the corps of volunteers for North Western Discovery*; he is therefore to be obeyed and respected accordingly.

Serg^t Gass is directed to take charge of the late Serg^t Floyd's mess, and immediately to enter on the discharge of such other duties, as have by their previous orders been prescribed for the government of the Sergeants of this corps.

The Commanding officers have every reason to hope from the previous faithfull services of Serg^t Gass, that this expression of their approbation will be still further confirmed by his vigilant attention in future to his duties as a Sergeant. the Commanding officers are still further confirmed in the high opinion they had previously formed of the capacity, deligence and integrety of Serg^t Gass, from the wish expressed by a large majority of his comrades for his appointment as Sergeant.

MERIWETHER LEWIS,
Cap^t 1st U. S. Reg^t Infy.
W^m CLARK Cp^t &c.

[Clark:]

27th August Monday 1804. —

This morning the Star call^d the morning Star much larger than Common, G. Drewyer came up and informed that he could neither find Shannon nor horses, we Sent Shields & J Fields, back to hunt Shannon & the horses, with derections to keep on the Hills to the Grand Calumet above on River *Kacure (quecure)*¹

We Set Sail under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 7 miles passed a *White* Clay Marl or Chalk Bluff under this Bluff [which] is extensive I discovered large Stone much like lime incrusted with a clear substance which I believe to be *Cobalt*, also Ore is embeded in the Dark earth, resembling Slate [but] much Softer. above this Bluff we had the Prairie

¹ A corruption of *Rivière qui Court*, the French name of the Niobrara (or Rapid) River. — ED.

Set on fire to let the Soues See that we were on the river, and as a Signal for them to Come to it.

At 2 oClock passed the Mouth of *River Jacque* [or *Yeankton*,]¹ one Indian at the mouth of this river Swam to the Perogue, we landed and two others Came to us, those Ind^s informed that a large Camp of Soues, were on R. Jacque near the mouth. We sent Serj^t Pryor & a Frenchman with M^r Durion, the Soues interpeter to the Camp with directions to invite the principal Chiefs to Council with us at a Bluff above Called the Calumet. two of those Indians accompanied them and the third continued in the Boat Showing an inclination to Continue, this boy is a Mahar, and inform that his nation, were gone to the Pannies [*Panies*] to make a peace with that nation.

We proceeded on about one and a half miles and inCamped on a bar makeing out from the S. S. the wind blew hard from the South. A cool and Pleasent evening, The river has fallen verry slowly and is now low.

Course Dis^t & Refr^s August 27.

N. 73° W.	7	Miles to the upper part of a Calx or Chalk Bluff on the L. S. haveing pass ^d a large Sand bar on the L. S. and two on the S. S. also some Small Bars in the R.
North	3	M ^{ls} to a tree in a bend to the S. S. pass 2 Sand bars in the river.
West	2½	M ^{ls} to the Mouth of River Jacque on the S. S. two large Sand bars on the L. S.
S. 80° W.	1 ½	M ^{ls} on the Side of a large Mud bar Makeing out above the River Jacque or Yeankton.
	14	

This river about 85 or 90 yds. Wide and is navigable for Perogues a Great distance, it heads with the S^t Peters, of the Misissippi & the *red River* which runs into Lake Winipeck and Hudsons Bay.

¹ The James (or Dakota) River. — ED.

28th August Tuesday 1804. —

Set out under a Stiff Breeze from the South and proceeded on pass^d a Willow Island at 2 Miles several Sand bars, the [river] Wide & Shallow at 4 miles passed a Short White Bluff of about 70 or 80 feet high, below this Bluff the Prarie rises gradually from the water back to the Hight of the Bluff which is on the Starboard Side here the Indian who was in the boat returned to the Soues [*Sieoue*] Camp on the R Jacque. Cap^t Lewis & my Self much indisposed owing to Some cause for which we cannot account one of the Perogues run a Snag thro her and was near Sinking in the opinions of the Crew. we came too below the *Calumet Bluff* and formed a Camp in a Butifull Plain near the foot of the high land which rises with a gradual assent near this Bluff¹ I observe more timber in the Valeys & on the Points than useal. The Perogue which was injured I had unloaded and the Loading put into the other Perogue which we intended to Send back & changed the Crew after examoning her & finding that She was unfit for service determined to Send her back by the party Some load which was in the Perogue much Injur'd.

The wind blew hard this afternoon from the South. J. Shields & J. Fields who was Sent back to look for Shannon and the Horses joined us and informed that Shannon had the horses ahead and that they Could not overtake him This man not being a first rate Hunter, we deturmined to Send one man in pursute of him with some Provisions.

Course Dis: & Reffr^t 28th Aug^t 1804.

- S. 76. W. $4\frac{1}{2}$ M^{ls} to the lower part of a Bluff of a Brownish red on
S. S. pass^d Sev^l Sand bars.
S. 60^o W. $\frac{4}{8\frac{1}{2}}$ M^l to the lower part of the Calumet Bluff L. S. passed
a p^t on east Side and Several Sand bars.

¹ In Knox Co., Nebr., opposite Lower Buffalo Island. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 90). Nearly opposite Yankton, a little below. — E. E. BLACKMAN.

[Orderly Book; Lewis:]

Orders, August 28th 1804

The commanding officers direct that the two messes who form the crews of the perogues shall select each one man from their mess for the purpose of cooking, and that these cooks as well as those previously appointed to the messes of the Barge crew, shall in future be exempted from mounting guard, or any detail for that duty; they are therefore no longer to be held on the royster.

M. LEWIS Cap^t
 1st U. S. Reg^t Infy.
 W^m CLARK Cp^t &c

[Clark:]

29th August Wednesday 1804. —

Some rain last night & this morning, Sent on Colter with Provisions in pursute of Shannon, had a Toe roap made of Elk Skin, I am much engaged riteing. at 4 oClock P. M. Serg^t Pryor & M^t Dorion with 5 Cheifs and about 70 men & boys arrived on the opposit Side we Sent over a Perogue & Mr. Dorrion & his Son who was tradeing with the Indians came over with Serj^t Pryor, and informed us that the Chiefs were there we sent Serj^t Pryor & young Mr. Dorion¹ with Som Tobacco, Corn and a few Kittles for them to Cook in, with directions to inform the Chiefs that we would Speek to them tomorrow.

Those Indians brought with them for their own use 2 Elk & 6 Deer which the young men Killed on the way from their Camp 12 Miles distant.

Serj^t Pryor informs me that when [they] came near the Indian Camp they were met by men with a Buffalow roabe to carry them, M^t Dorion informed they were not the owners of the Boats & did not wish to be carried” the Scioues Camps are handsom of a Conic form Covered with Buffalow Roabs Painted different colours and all compact & handsomly arranged, Covered all round an open part in the Centre for the fire, with Buffalow roabs, each Lodg has a place for

¹ The younger Dorion was afterward slain on the headwaters of the Columbia, while trapping for the unfortunate Astoria expedition. — J. N. BASKETT.



PUNKA INDIANS ENCAMPED ON THE BANKS OF THE MISSOURI

Cooking detached, the lodges contain from 10 to 15 persons. a Fat Dog was presented as a mark of their Great respect for the party of which they partook hartily and thought it good and well flavored.

The River Jacque is Deep & is navigable for Perogues a long distance up at the Mouth it is Shallow & narrow but above it is 80 or 90 yards Wide passing thro: rich Praries with but little timber this river passes the Souix River and heads with the S^t Peters and a branch of Red river which falls into Lake Winepeck to the North.

30th of August Thursday 1804.

a verry thick fog this morning after Preparing some presents for the Cheifs which we intended [to] make by giving Meadels, and finishing a Speech which we intended to give them, we sent M^r Dorion in a Perogue for the Cheifs and Warriars to a Council under an Oak Tree near where we had a flag flying on a high flagstaff at 12 oClock we met and Cap. L. Delivered the Speach & then made one great Chiff by giving him a Meadel¹ & Some Cloathes, one 2^d Chief & three Third Chiefs in the same way, they rec^d those things with the goods and tobacco with pleasure To the Grand Chief we gave a Flag and the parole (*certificate*) & Wampom with a hat & Chief^s Coat,² We Smoked out of the pipe of peace, & the Chiefs retired to a Bourey [*Bowray*] made of bushes by their young men to Divide their presents and Smoke eat and Council Capt. Lewis & My self retired to dinner and consult about other measures. M^r Daurion is much displeased that we did not invite him to dine with us (which he was Sorry for afterwards). The Souex is a Stout bold looking

¹ For excellent description and illustrations of these medals (first-grade), see Wheeler, *On the Trail of Lewis and Clark* (N. Y., 1904), i, pp. 139, 140. Three of the medals distributed by Lewis and Clark have since been found — at the mouth of Wallawalla River, at Fort Clatsop, and at the mouth of Potlatch River, respectively. — ED.

² Described by Biddle as “ a richly laced uniform of the United States artillery corps, with a cocked hat and red feather.” — ED.

people, (the young men handsom) & well made, the greater part of them make use of Bows & arrows, Some few fuseses I observe among them, notwithstanding they live by the Bow and arrow, they do not Shoot So Well as the Nothern Indians the Warriors are Verry much dekerated with Paint Porcupine quils & feathers, large leagins and mockersons, all with buffalow roabs of Different Colours. the Squars wore Petic coats & a White Buffalow roabe with the black hare turned back over their necks and Sholders.

I will here remark a **SOCIETY**¹ which I had never before this day heard was in any nation of Indians, four of which is at this time present and all who remain of this Band. Those who become Members of this Society must be brave active young men who take a *Vow* never to give back let the danger be what it may, in War Parties they always go forward without screening themselves behind trees or anything else to this Vow they Strictly adhier dureing their Lives. an instance which happened not long sence, on a party in Crossing the R Missouri on the ice, a whole was in the ice imediately in their Course which might easily have been avoided by going around, the foremost man went on and was lost the others wer draged around by the party. in a battle with the Crow² [Kite] Indians who inhabit the *Cout Noir*³ or black Mountain out of 22 of this Society 18 was Killed, the remaining four was draged off by their Party Those men are likely fellows the[y] Set together Camp & Dance together. This Society is in imitation of the Societies of the de Curbo or Crow (*De Corbeau, Kite*) Indians, whom they imitate.

¹ The "society" of warriors here described was one of the branches of "the military and social organization which existed among the Blackfeet, Sioux, Cheyenne, Kiowa, and probably all the prairie tribes except the Comanche in the South," according to Mooney (*U. S. Bur. Ethnal. Rep.*, 1892-93, pp. 986-989), who describes it as it existed among the Arapaho. — Ed.

² The Crows are a Hidatsa tribe, allied to the Minitaree, and originally located on the Yellowstone River; in later years, they have been gathered on the Crow reservation in Montana. — Ed.

³ That is, *Côte Noir*. "Our authors use the term 'Black mountains' for any of the elevated country to the west of the Missouri in Northern Nebraska and both Dakotas." — CUVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 171).

31st of August, 1804—

after the Indians got their Brackfast the Chiefs met and arranged themselves in a row with elligent pipes of peace all pointing to our Seets, we Came foward and took our Seets, the Great Cheif *The Shake hand* rose and Spoke to some length aproving what we had said and promising to pursue the advice.

Mar to ree 2^d Cheif (White Crain) [*White Crane*] rose and made a Short Speech and reured to the great Chief *Par nar ne arpar be* (struck by the Pania) 3rd Chief rose and made a short speech *Ar ea we char che* (the half man) 3rd Chief rose & Spoke at some length much to the [same] purpose.¹ *The* other Cheif said but little One of the Warriars Spoke after all was don & promised to Support the Cheifs, the[y] promis^d to go and See their Great father in the Spring with M^r Dorion, and to do all things we had advised them to do. and all concluded by telling the distresses of their nation by not haveing traders, & wished us to take pity on them, the[y] wanted Powder Ball, & a little Milk [*rum; milk of great father means spirits.*]

last night the Indians Danced untill late in their Dances we *gave them* [*throw into them as is usual*] Som Knives Tobacco & bells & tape & Binding with which they wer Satisfied.²

We gave a Certificate to two Men of War, attendants on the Chief. gave to all the Chiefs a Carrot of Tobacco. had a talk with Mr. Dorion, who agreed to Stay and Collect the Chiefs from as Many Bands of Soux as he coud this fall & bring about a peace between the suoex and their neighbours &c. &c. &c.

After Dinner we gave Mr. Peter Dorion, a Commission to act with a flag and some Cloathes & Provisions & instructions

¹ The names of these chiefs are thus given by Biddle: Weucha ("Shake Hand," called by the French *Le Libérateur*); Mahtoree ("White Crane"); Pawnaueah-pahbe ("Struck by the Pawnee"); and Aweawechache ("Half Man")—explained as probably originating in its owner's modesty, "who on being told of his exploits, would say, 'I am no warrior: I am only half a man.'" These speeches are given by Biddle in more detail.—ED.

² The entry for Aug. 31 to this point is misplaced in the MS.; it is found on pp. 58–60 of Codex A, preceded by this memorandum: "omited to put in the 31st of August in Place."—ED.

to bring about a peace with the Seioux, Mahars, Panies, Poncaries, [Poncas — Ed.] Ottoes & Missouries, and to employ any trader to take Some of the Cheifs of each or as many of those nations as he Could Perticularly the Seuouex (*down to Washⁿ*) I took a Vocabulary of the Suoux Language, and the Answer to a few quaries such a[s] refured to their Situation, Trade, Number, War, &c. &c. This Nation is Divided into 20 Tribes, possessing Seperate interests. Collectively they are noumerous say from 2 to 3000 men, their interests are so unconnected that Some bands are at war with Nations [with] which other bands are on the most friendly terms. This Great Nation who the French has given the Nickname of Suouex, Call themselves *Dar co tar* [Dakota — Ed.] their language is not peculiarly their own, they Speak a great number of words, which is the Same in every respect with the Maha, Poncarer, Osarge & Kansas. which clearly proves that those nations at some period not more that a century or two past are of the Same nation. Those *Dar ca ter's* or Suoux inhabit or rove over the Countrey on the Red river of Lake Winipeck, S^t Peters & the West of the Missi[ss]-ippie, above Prarie De Cheen (*Prairie de Chien*) heads of River Demoin, and the Missouri and its waters on the N. Side for a great extent. they are only at peace with 8 nations, & agreeable to their Calculation at War with twenty odd. Their trade coms from the British, except this Band and one on Demoin who trade with the Traders of S^t Louis. The[y] furnish *Beaver*, Martain, Loups, (*Wolfs*) Pekon, (*pichou*) Bear & Deer Skins, and have about 40 Traders among them. The *Dar co tar* or Suouez rove & follow the Buffalow raise no corn or any thing else the woods & praries affording a suff[i]cency, the[y] eat Meat, and Substitute the Ground potato which grow in the Plains for bread.

**The Names of the Defferent Tribes or bands of the Sceoux,
or Dar co tar Nation.**

- 1st *Che cher ree Yankton* (or bois ruley) (*brulé*) now present inhabit the Suouex & Demoin Rivers and the Jacque. (200 men.)
2nd *Ho in de borto* (Poles) they live [rove] on the heads of Souex and Jacques Rivers.

- 3rd *Me Ma car jo* (Make fence on the river) rove on the Country near the big bend of the Missouries.
- 4th *Sou on, Te ton* (People of the Prarie) the[y] rove in the Plains N. of the Riv Missouriic above this.
- 5th *Wau pa coo tar* (Leaf Beds) the[y] live near the Prarie de Chain Near the Mississippi.
- 6th *Te Car ton* (or Village of Prarie) rove on the waters of the Mississippi above Prarie de Chain.
- 7th *Ne Was tar ton* (big Waters Town) rove on the Mississippi above the S^t Peters River.
- 8th *Wau pa tone* (Leaf Nation) live 10 Leagues up St. Peters River.
- 9th *Cas Carba* (White Man) live 35 Leagues up St. Peters River.
- 10th *Mi ca cu op si ba* (Cut bank) rove on the head of St. Peters.
- 11th *Sou on* (————) rove on St. Peters river in the Praries.
- 12th *Sou se toons* (————) live 40 Leages up the St. Peters river.

The names of the other bands neither of the Souex's interpreters could inform me.¹ in the evening late we gave M^r Dourion a bottle of whiskey, & he with the Cheifs & his Son Crossed the river and Camped on the Opposit bank. Soon after night a violent wind from the N. W. with rain the rain Continud the greater part of the night. The river a rising a little.

September 1st Saturday 1804 —

M^r Dourion lift his Kittle & Sent back for it &c. we Set out under a jentle Breeze from the S. (It rained half the last night) proceeded on pass the Bluffs comps^d of a yellowish red, & Brownish (☉) White Clay which is a[s] hard as Chalk (and much resembling it) this Bluff is 170 or 180 feet high,

¹ These tribes are enumerated very differently by Biddle, thus (1, pp. 61, 62) : (1) Yanktons — 200 warriors ; (2) Tetons of the burnt woods — 300 men ; (3) Tetons Okandandas — 150 men ; (4) Tetons Minnakenozzo — 250 men ; (5) Tetons Saone — 300 men ; (6) Yanktons of the Plains, or Big Devils — 500 men ; (7) Wahpatone — 200 men ; (8) Mindawarcarton — 300 men ; (9) Wahpatoota, or Leaf Beds — 150 men ; (10) Sistasooné — 200 men. Cf. Lewis's "Statistical View of the Indian Nations Inhabiting the Territory of Louisiana," accompanying Jefferson's *Message to Congress*, Feb. 19, 1806 (Washington, 1806) ; the substance of this "View" will be republished in the appendix to the present work. For modern scientific classification, see Powell's "Indian Linguistic Families," in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol Rep.*, 1885-86, pp. 111-118. Cf. *Wis. Hist. Collections*, xvi, pp. 193, 194. — Ed.

here the High lands approach near the river on each Side, that on the S. S. not so high as that on the L. S. opposit the Bluffs is Situated a Large Island Covered with timber close under the L. S. above the Is^d the high land approach & form a Clift to the river on the S. S. this Clift is Called White Bear Clift one of those animals haveing been kiled in a whole in it.

1st of September Saturday 1804.—

Some hard wind and rain, cloudy all day, the river Wide & hills on each Side near the river, pass^d a large (1) Island which appeared to be composed of Sand, Covered with Cotton wood close under the S. S. we landed at the lower point of a large Island on the S. S. Called *bon homme* or *Good Man*, here Cap. Lewis & my self went out a Short distance on the L. S. to See a Beaver house, which was Said to be of Great hite & Situated in a Pond We could not find the house and returned after night Drewyer Killed an Elk, & a Beaver. numbers of Cat fish cought, those fish is so plenty that we catch them at any time and place in the river.

Course Dis^s & refr^s 1st Sept.

- N. 88 W. 4 M^s to a high point of on the S. S. having pass^d an Is^d (1) on the L. S. & Several Sand bars.
 S. 75^o W. 2 M^s to the lower p^t of a large Island on S. S. passed a p^t on the L. S. and a Sand bar.
 S. 68^o W. 4 M^s to a p^t on L. S. pass^d the upper p^t of the Isl^d SS. and some land with bows [boughs — ED.] and evident marks of being made 24 [feet — ED.] above water.
 S. 80. W. $\frac{5}{16}$ M^s to a tree at the lower p^t of Bon homme Island on S. S. haveing ps^d a p^t on the S. S. a Deep bend of Sand and Willows on L. S.

2nd September Sunday 1804. —

Set out early and proceeded on passed the Island and Landed on the S. S. above under a Yellow Clay bluff of 110 feet high, the wind blew verry hard ahead from the N. W. with Some rain and verry cold, G. Drewnyer R. Fields, Newman & howard Killed four fine Elk we had the meat all jurked and

the Skins Dried to Cover the Perogue, on the Side of the Bluff I observed Bear Grass & Rhue, at Sun Set the wind lulled and cleared up Cold, the high land on the L. S. is verry high, & uneven, that on the S. S. from 80 to 120 foot & is leavel back but few Small Streams falling into the river.

Course Distance & reffs 2^d Sp!

N. 75° W. 3 M^h to the lower part of an antient fortification (1) in a bend to the L. S. this Course passed over a p^t of the Is^d & Sand.

N. 45 W. $\frac{1}{4}$ M^l on the L. p^t pass^d the head of the Island at $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile ops^d a yellow bank S. S.

I went out and made a Survey of the antient Works which is Situated in a level Plain about 3 Miles from the hills which are high.

A Discreption of the Fortification

(1) Commencing on the river ops^d the Good Mans Island, first Course from the river is

S. 76° W. 96 yards thence

S. 84. W. 53 yards (at this angle a kind of angle or horn work)

N. 69 W. 300 yards to a high part, passing the gateway Covered by two half Circlel works one back of the other lower than the main work the Gate forms a right angle projecting inward.

N. 32 W. 56 yards

N. 20 W. $\frac{73}{578}$ yards. This part of the work appears to have [been] either double, or a covered way. from this Some irregular works appear to have been on mounds between this and the river, with a Deep round whole in the center of a Gorge formed by another angle. This part of the work is from 10 to 15 feet 8 Inches — the Mounds of Various hights the base of the work is from 75 to 105 feet, Steep inward and forming a kind of Glassee [Glacis] outwards.

N. 32° W. 96 yards to the Commencement of a Wall from 8 to 10 feet high this Course not on the Wall but thro to the commencement of another detached

N. 81° W. 1830 yards to the river & above where this bank Strikes the river is the remains of a Circular work.

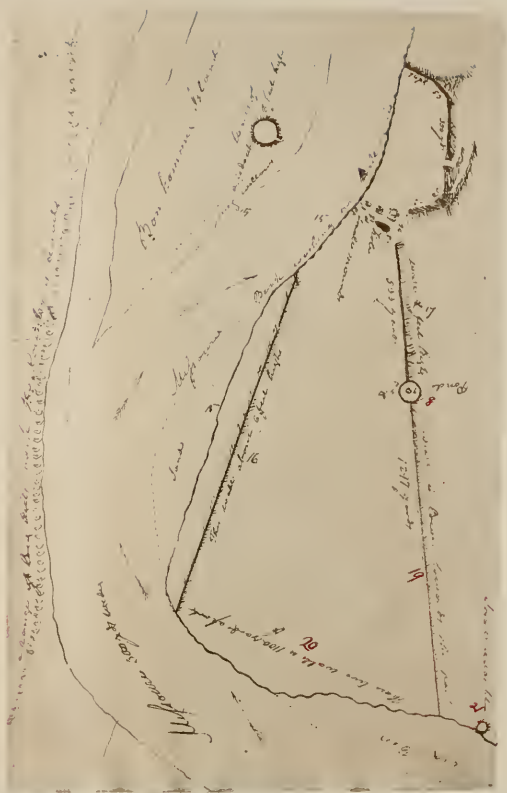
in this Course at 533 yards a Deep Pond of 73 yards Diameter perfectly round is in the Course of the bank which is about 8 feet high, from this Pond the bank lowers gradually. a bank about the same high runs near the river, and must have joined the main work at a part which is now washed into the river, this is also perfectly Streight and widens from the main work, as the river above has washed in its banks for a great distance I cannot form an Idear How those two long works joined. where they Strike the river above, they are about 1100 y^{ds} apart,

[Another Description.¹]

- N^o 1 a Wall of the Antient Work Commencing on the bank of the River and running on a direct line S. 76° W. 96 yard, about 75 feet baice and 8 feet high.
2. Wall Continued. and Course S. 84° W. 53 yards from an angle formed by a sloping decent N^o 13, has the appearance of a hornwork of nearly the same hight of the former angle N^o 1.
3. the Wall Continued on a Course N. 69° W. for 300 yards in which there is a low part of the wall which is Covered by two Circular and lower Walls one back of the other. 8. 8. which covers the gate way Completely, between those outer Walls 8. 8. there appears to have been a Covered way out of the Main work into the vacancy between those two Walls N^o 9. This Wall No. 3 is 8 feet high and about 75 feet Bace.
4. a Wide part of the Wall which is about 12 feet high and 105 feet base on the Course N. 69° W. Continued from the gate way.
5. The Wall about 15 feet high and about 90 feet bace on a course N. 32° W. for 56 yds.
6. the Wall Continus on a Course N. 20° W. for 73 yards and ends abruptly near a whole near Several Mounds prismiscusly in the Gorge of the Work between this and the river.
10. N. 32° W. 96 yards across a low place much lower than the Common leavel of the plain to the Commencement of a wall of 8 feet high this is an open Space, from whence there is Some appearance of a Covered way to the Water.

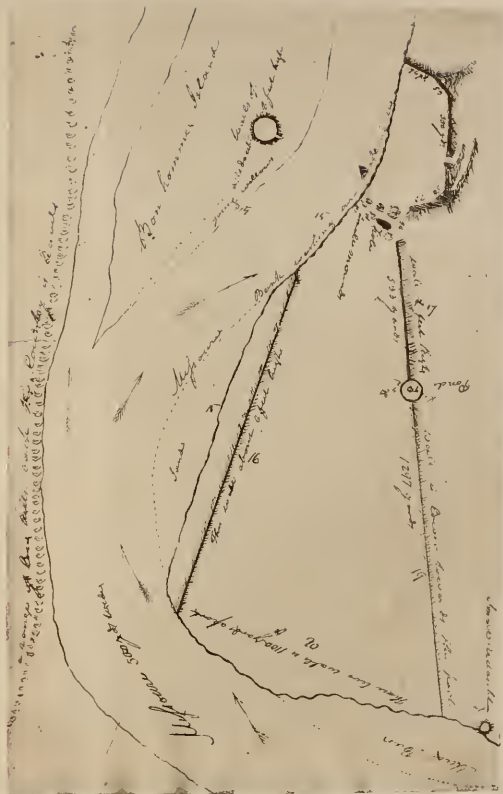
¹ This matter is found in Codex N, pp. 81-85. — Ed.

14
Multiplication
8



Ancient Fortification on the Missouri River,
sketch plan by Clark.

14
Multiplication



Ancient Fortification on the Missouri River,
 sketch-plan by Clark.

10. is a large hollow place much lower then the plain
 12. 12. Several little Mounds in the gouge
 7. the gateway to the Strong work.
 14. a redoubt Situated on an Island which is maxcing on the Side next to the Main Work, the wall forming this redoubt is 6 feet high
 15. 15. The river banks at the waters edge
 16. a thick Wall of about 6 feet high passing from the Rivers edge at the gouge of the Work perfectly streight to the bend of the River above and there ends abruptly where the Missouri is under mining its banks on this Wall maney large Cotton Trees of two & 3 feet diameter, the Bank passes thro' a wood in its whole Course
 N 17. 19. a Streight wall of 1830 yard extending from the Gouge of the strong work on a Course N. 81° W. This wall is 8 feet high to a round pon (N^o 18) from then it becoms lower and strikes the Missouri at a place where that river has the ap^{ts} [appearance] of haveing incoached on its banks for a great distance, this wall passes in it's whole course thro' a level plain.
 18. a Deep pond of 73 yards diameter in the Wall, perfectly round
 20. Thro from the extremity of one Wall to the other 1100 yards.
 21. a Small redoubt on the bank of the river.

The Strong part of this work which must be about $\frac{2}{3}$ of it's original Size Contains Twenty acres.

The part Contained between the two Walls is about 500 acres, and it is Certain that those Walls have been longer and must have contained a much greater Space

I am informed by our french interpeters that a great number of those antient works are in Defferent parts of the Countrey, on the Plate River, Kansas, Jacque, Osarge, Mine river &c. A Small one is on [an] Island opposit the one I have Discribed, and two of our Party Saw two of those Antient f[or]tresses on the Petteet Arc Creek on the upper Side near the Mouth, each angle of which were 100 yards and about 8 feet high.¹

¹ The opinion now prevails, that these "fortifications" were only natural formations, made by the drifting sands. — Ed.

3rd of September Monday 1804. —

a very Cold morning wind from N. W. we Set out at Sun rise, & proceeded on to a Bluff below the Mouth of Plumb Creek [12 yds] on the S. S. and took an observation of the Suns altitude.

This Creek is Small it “abounds with plumbs of a Delicious flavour” the River is Wide and Crowded with Sand bars. it is rising a little but little timber in this Country all that is, is on the river in the Points. we came too on the L. S. in the edge of a Plain an[d] Camped for the night. we Saw Some signs of the two men Shannon & Colter, Shannon appeared to be ahead of Colter. The White banks appear to continue on both sides of the river. Grapes plenty and finely flavored.

Course Dis^t & refs. 3rd Sept^r

West	$\frac{1}{2}$	M ^l on the L. S. ops ^d a Bluff
S. 35 W.	3	M ^l to the Upper point of some wood at the foot of the high land on the L. S. in a bend of the river pass a large Sand bar 400 y ^{ds} wide on the L. S. and a p ^t & Sand bar from the S. S.
West	$5\frac{1}{2}$	M ^l to a obj ^t in a Deep bend to the S. S. pass ^d a p ^t S. S. and a large Sand bar on the L. S.
S. 45. W.	1	M ^l to the Mouth of Plumb C ^t on the S. S. ps ^d und ^r White bank.
South	$\frac{5}{15}$	M ^l to a p ^t on the S. S. pass ^d Several Sand bars & two p ^{ts} on the L. S.

4th September Tuesday 1804. —

a very Cold Wind from the S. S. E. we Set out early and proceeded on [to] the Mouth of a Small Creek in a bend to the L. S. Called White lime, at $1\frac{1}{2}$ Miles higher up passed a large Creek on the L. S. Called *R. au Platte* or *White Paint*¹ between those two Creeks (the latter of which is ab^t 30 yd^s Wide) we passed under a Bluff of red Ceeder, at + M^l $\frac{1}{2}$ passed the mouth of the River *Que Courre* (*rapid R*) on the L. S. and Came to a Short distance above. this River is 152

¹ Now Bazile creek. — ED.

yards Wide at the Mouth & 4 feet Deep Throwing out Sands like the Platt, (only Corser) forming bars in its mouth. I went up this river three Miles to a butifull Plain on the upper Side where the Pnias once had a Village this River widens above its mouth and is divided by sands and Islands, the Current verry rapid, not navigable for evin Canoes without Great dificyelty owing to its Sands; the colour like that of the Plat is light, the heads of this river is not known [*in the Black Mountⁿ & waters a hilly country of indifferent soil*] it coms into the Missourie from the S. W. by West, and I am told that i[t]s Gen^l Course Some distance up is parrelel with the Missourie.

Course Dist^s & refr^s the 4th of Sept^r

S. 5° W.	1½	M ^l to the Mo. of a Creek on the L. S. below a Ceeder Clift.
S. 35°	1½	M ^l to the Mo. of White Paint River on the L. S. Passing under a Ceeder Clift.
West	3	M ^l to the Upper p ^t of Wood on the L. S. ops ^d a Bluff of bluish Clay, a S ^d bar L. S.
N. 72° W.	1¼	M ^l to a Mound on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S. several Sand bars in the river
West	$\frac{3\frac{1}{4}}{8}$	M ^l to the Mouth of the river <i>Que Courre</i> on the L. S. the hills leave the river on the S. S. river Crouded with Sand bars, & wind hard.

[At the end of Codex B, written on the inside of the cover, is the following memorandum:]

U S. Due 4° Sep^r 1804

John Potts as p[er] Duebill	\$ 20.5
Tho ^t P. Howard	8.10
Alexander Willard	<u>13.55</u>

~~MS~~ after this I will put the Course Destance & referrences of each day first and remk^s after.

Course Dis^{ns} & Ref^{ns} — Sept^r 5th

N. 85° W. 2	M ^{ls} to a Willow p ^s on the S. S. a Bluff ops ^d
N. 35° W. 3	M ^{ls} to a high part of a Bluff on the S. S. a large Isl ^d Called Pania Is ^d in Middle of the river.
N. 58° W. 3½	to a Creek on the S. S. ps ^d the Is ^d at 1 M ^l a Sand bar makeing from it. Poncarar [Ponca] River opposit on the L. S. 30 y ^{ds}
West 3½	M ^{ls} to the Lower point of a large Island near the L. Side (1)
N. 70° W. 1 ¾ 13 ¾	M ^{ls} to the right Side of the S ^d Island to the head passed a Willow Is ^d & a Sand bar

September 5th Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early the wind blew hard from the South, Goats, turkeys Seen today, passed a large Island (1) ops^d this Island near the head the Poncarars River Coms into the Missouri from the West this river is about 30 yards wide. dispatched two men to the Poncarars Village Situated in a handsom Plain on the lower Side of this Creek about two miles from the Missouri the Poncarars Nations is Small¹ and at this time out in the praries hunting the Buffalow, one of the men Sent to the Village Killed a Buffalow in the town, the other, a large Buck near it, Some Sign of the two men who is a head. above the Island on the S. S. we passed under a Bluff² of Blue earth, under which Several Mineral Springs broke out the water of which had a taste like *Salts*, We Came too on the upper point of a large Island (which I call *No preserves* Island) here we made a Ceeder Mast, our hunters brought in three bucks, and two elks this evening which we had jurked.

One of the hunters Shields, informed that he Saw Several black tailed Deer, near the Poncarer Village

¹ The Biddle text states (i, p. 66) that this Ponca tribe, which had once numbered 400 men, was then reduced to about fifty, who had taken refuge with the Omaha. Both tribes had been sedentary, but were driven from their villages by war and pestilence. — Ed.

² Now called Chouteau Bluffs. — Ed.

Course Distance and referencies. — 6th Sep^r 1804.

West	$1\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} to a pt of Wood on the S. S. opposit a Bluff.
N. 85° W.	$7\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} passed a pt on the S. S. at $1\frac{1}{2}$ M ^{ls} above which
miles	$8\frac{1}{2}$	is a large Sand bar on L. S. a high Clift of Blue & redish soft rock, Colter joined us.

Sept 6th Thursday 1804. —

a Storm this morning from the N. W. which lasted a few minits, we Set out and proceeded on passed the head of the Is^d which is Seperated from the L. S. by a narrow Channel, a hard wind from the N. W. a Verry Cold day. we camped on the S. S. at the upper point of Some timber, Sometime before Night, no timber, [*being in reach.*]

I saw Several goats¹ on the hills on the S. S. also Buffalow in great numbers.

Course Distance & referencies. — 7th Sept. 1804.

N. 60° W.	3	M ^{ls} to the pt of a Bluff on the S. S. ops ^d a pt on L. S.
West	$2\frac{1}{2}$	Miles to a tree in a bend to the L. S. near the foot of
	$5\frac{1}{2}$	a round mountain resembling a Cupola (1) passed 2 Small Is ^{l^{ds}} S. S.

Sept. 7th Friday —

a verry Cold morning wind S. E. Set out at day light we landed after proceeding $5\frac{1}{2}$ Miles, near the foot of a round Mounting, which I saw yesterday, resembling a dome.² Cap. Lewis & Myself walked up to the top which forms a Cone and is about 70 feet higher than the high lands around it, the Base is about 300 foot in decending this Cupola, discovered a Village of Small animals that burrow in the grown (those animals are Called by the french Petite Chien) Killed one and Caught one a live by poreing a great quantity of Water in his hole³ we attempted to dig to the beds of one of those animals, after

¹ These "goats" were antelopes (*Antilocapra Americana*). This animal was new to science when discovered by Lewis and Clark in 1804, and was not technically named until 1815. — COVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 109).

² A conspicuous landmark, now known as "the Tower." — ED.

³ Gass says (p. 51) regarding this attempt, that "all the party, except the guard, went to it; and took with them all the Kettles and other vessels for holding water; but though they worked at the business till night, they only caught one of them." — ED.

digging 6 feet, found by running a pole down that we were not half way to his Lodge, we found 2 frogs in the hole, and Killed a Dark rattle Snake near with a Ground rat (*or prairie dog*) in him, (those rats are numerous) the Village of those animals Cov^d about 4 acres of Ground on a gradual decent of a hill and Contains great numbers of holes on the top of which those little animals Set erect make a Whistling noise and when alarmed Step into their hole. we por'd into one of the holes 5 barrels of Water without filling it. Those Animals are about the Size of a Small Squ[ir]rel Shorter (*or longer*) & thicker, the head much resembling a Squirrel in every respect, except the ears which is Shorter, his tail like a ground squirrel which they shake & whistle when allarm^d the toe nails long, they have fine fur & the longer hairs is gray,¹ it is Said that a kind of Lizard also a Snake reside with those animals. (*did not find this correct.*) Camped.

Course Distance & referrences. — 8th Sept^r

N. 35° W. 7 M^{ls} to a p^t on L. S. ops^d the house of M^r Troodo where he wintered in 96 & Seven Called the Pania ho^s in a woo[d] to the S. S. (1)

N. 88° W. 10 M^{ls} to a p^t of woods S. S. one mile above the commencement of this Course the Low^r p^t of a Willow Isl^d this Isl^d is 1¼ M^{ls} in length, in the middle of the R. a Small Sand Isl^d at its upper extremity.

17

8th of September Saturday —

Set out early and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 3 M^{ls} passed the house of Troodo where he wintered in 96. Called the Pania house, above is high hills on the S. S. on the S. S. much higher hills than useal appear to the North distant 8 Miles recently burnt. pass 3 Small Islands at about 5 Miles on this Course on the S. S. here Cap. Lewis Killed a Buffalow in the river, and the Men one other Came to on the lower point of an Island in the middle of the river Called Boat Island² and incamped, jurked the meat Killed

¹ The prairie-dog (*Cynomys ludovicianus*), then unknown to scientists; Coues thinks that Clark and Gass were the first to describe it. — Ed.

² The present Chicot Island; a little above the present Fort Randall. — Ed.

to day Consisting of 2 buffalow, one large Buck Elk, one Small, 4 Deer 3 Turkeys & a Squirrel, I joined the boat at this Camp, the Countrey on the S. S. is pore & broken.

Course Distance & reference. — 9th Sept^r

- N. 34° W. 3 M^s to a p^t on an Island on the L. S. of an Is^d passed Sand bars.
 N. 40. W. 3 M^s to an upper p^t of a Wood in a bend S. S.
 N. 83° W. 4½ M^s to a p^t on S. S.
 N. 44° W. 4 M^s to the upper p^t of a Wood L. S.

14½

9th September Sunday 1804 —

Set out at Sunrise and proceeded on passed the head of the Island on which we Camped, passed three Sand & Willow Islands, the Sand bars So noumerous, it is not worth mentioning them, the river Shoal or Shallow wind S. E. Came too and Camped on a Sand bar on the L. S. Capt. Lewis went out to kill a buffalow. I walked on Shore all this evening with a view to Kill a goat or Some Prarie Dogs in the evening after the boat landed, I Derected My Servent York with me to kill a Buffalow near the boat from a Numb^t then Scattered in the Plains. I saw at one view near the river at least 500 Buffalow, those animals have been in View all day feeding in the Plains on the L. S. every Copse of timber appear to have Elk or Deer.. D. Killed 3 Deer, I Kiled a Buffalow Y. 2, R. Fields one.

Course Distance & Reference — 10th Sept.

- North 5 M^s to a San^t Is^d und^r a Bluff^r to the S. S. passed Is^d on L. S.
 N. 65° W. 2 M^t to a p^t on the L. S. pass^d the Is^d on the L. S.
 N. 80° W. ½ M^t on the L. S.
 S. 80 W. 3 M^s to Ceder Island in the Middle of the R. found a fish back bone pitrefied also the h^d just below the Is^d on the top of a hill Situated on the L. S.
 N. 70° W. 8½ M^s to the Low^r p^t of an Is^d in a bend to the L. S. pass the h^d of Ceeder Island (2) and a large Is^d on the S. S. (3) & Many Sand bars. Shallow.
 N. 35. W. 1 M^t to the Lower p^t of a Small Island seperated by a Narrow Channel.

20

[143]

10th September Monday 1804—

a cloudy dark morning Set out early, a gentle breeze from the S. E. passed two Small Islands on the L. S. and one on the S. S. all in the first Course at 10½ Miles passed the lower point of an (2) Island Covered with red Ceeder Situated in a bend on the L. S. this Island is about 2 Miles in length (1) below this on a hill on the L. S. we found the back bone of a fish, 45 feet long tapering to the tale, Some teeth &c. those joints were Separated and all Petrefied. opposit this Island 1½ Miles from the river on the L. S. is a large Salt Spring of remarkable Salt Water. one other high up the hill ½ M^l not So Salt. we proceeded on under a Stiff Breeze. three Miles above Ceder Island passed a large Island on the S. S. no water on that Side. (3) Several elk Swam to this Island passed a Small Island near the center of the river, of a Mile in length, and Camped on one above Seperated from the other by a Narrow Chanel, those Islands are Called Mud Islands. the hunters killed 3 Buffalow & one Elk to day. The river is falling a little. Great number of Buffalow & Elk on the hill Side feeding deer scerce

Course Distance & reff: 11th Sep^r

N. 35° W.	4½	M ^l to the lower p ^t of an Island, passed the Is ^d on which we Camp ^d
N. 70° W.	2	M ^l to the head of the Island on its L. S.
N. 45° W.	3	M ^l to a p ^t on the L. S. below an Island (1)
N. 50° W.	2	M ^l to the Upper p ^t of an Island on the S. S. ; passed one on the L. S. ops ^d to which at ¼ of a Mile is a Village of the Barking Squirrel L. S.
West	$\frac{4\frac{1}{2}}{16}$	M ^l to a p ^t on the L. S. passed an Is ^d on the S. S. just above the one mentioned in the last Course.

Sept. 11th Tuesday 1804—

A cloudy morning, Set out verry early, the river wide & Shallow the bottom narrow, & the river crouded with Sand bars, passed the Island on which we lay at one mile, Passed three Islands one on the L. S. and 2 on the S. S. opposit the Island on the L. S. I saw a Village of Barking Squirrel

[prairie-dog — F.D.] 970 y^{ds} long, and 800 y^{ds} Wide Situated on a jentle Slope of a hill, those ananimals are numerous, I killed 4 with a View to have their Skins Stufed.

here the Man who left us with the horses 22 (16) days ago *George Shannon* He started 26 Aug¹) and has been a head ever since joined us nearly Starved to Death, he had been 12 days without any thing to eat but Grapes & one Rabit, which he Killed by shooting a piece of hard Stick in place of a ball. This Man Supposing the boat to be a head pushed on as long as he could, when he became weak and feable deturmined to lay by and waite for a tradeing boat, which is expected, Keeping one horse for the last resorse, thus a man had like to have Starved to death in a land of Plenty for the want of Bullitts or Something to kill his meat. we Camped on the L. S. above the mouth of a run a hard rain all the afternoon, & most of the night, with hard wind from the N. W. I walked on Shore the forepart of this day over Some broken Country which Continues about 3 Miles back & then is leavel & rich all Plains, I saw Several foxes & Killed a Elk & 2 Deer & Squirels. the men with me killed an Elk, 2 Deer & a Pelican

Course Distance & ref^{ts} Sept^r 12th

N. 45° W. 4 Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. Passed an Island in the Center of the river and several Sand bars (1) on
 ——— which we found great dificuelty in passing the Water
 4 being verry Shallow

Sept. 12th Wednesday 1804 —

A Dark Cloudy Day the wind hard from the N. W. We Passed (1) a Island in the middle of the river at the head of which we found great dificuelty in passing between the Sand bars the Water Swift and Shallow, it took $\frac{3}{4}$ of the day to make one mile, we Camped on the L. S. ops^d a Village of Barking Prarie Squirels

I walked out in the morn:g and Saw Several Villages of those little animals, also a great number of Grous & 3 Foxes, and observed Slate & Coal Mixed, Some verry high hills on each Side of the river. rain a little all day.

Course Distance and references Sep^r 13th

N. 45° E.	1½	M ^{ls} on the L. S. a Sand bar Making out.
N. 30° E.	1	M ^l on the L. Side.
N. 60° W.	1	M ^l on the L. S. to a Clift.
N. 64° W.	2¾	M ^{ls} on the L. S. to the Commencement of a wood passing under a Bluff of Slate & Coal, & a Sand bar opposit.
North	1¾	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of high Land on the S. S. pass ^d Sand bars on both Sides, Shallow
N. 10° W.	4 12	M ^{ls} to the lower p ^t of a timber passing under a Bluff, a Sand & Willow Island on the L. S.

13th Sep^r Thursday 1804—

A Dark drizzly Day, G. D. Cought 4 Beaver last night the wind from the NW. Cold Set out early and proceeded on verry well, passed a number of Sand bars, Cap^t Lewis Killed a Porcupin on a Cotton tree feeding on the leaves & bowers [boughs — Ed.] of the said tree, the water is verry Shallow (*in places*) being Crowded with Sand bars Camped on the S. Side under a Bluff. the Bluff on the S. S. not so much impregnated with mineral as on the L. S. Muskeetors verry troublesom.

Course Distance and references Sep^r 14

N. 68° W.	2¾	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of high Land on the L. S. pass ^d a round Island on the S. S.
S. 70° W.	2½	M ^{ls} to a tree in the p ^t on the L. S. passed the Mo. of a run on the L. S.
N. 4° W.	2½	M ^{ls} to the mouth of a Small Creek ¹ on the bend to the L. S.
N. 10° E.	1¼ 9	M ^{ls} to to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. passed a bad Sand bar.

14th Sep^r Friday 1804. —

Set out early proceeded on Passed several Sand bars the river wide and Shallow. 3 beaver caught last night, Drizeley rain in the forepart of the day, Cloudy and disagreeable. I

¹ A little above the present site of Brulé City, S. D. — COVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 116).

walked on Shore with a view to find an old Vulcanoe, Said to be in this neighbourhood by M^r J. McKey of S^t Charles. I walked on Shore the whole day without Seeing any appearance of the Vulcanoe, in my walk I Killed a Buck Goat [antelope — Ed.] of this Countrey, about the hight of the Grown Deer, its body Shorter the Horns which is not very hard and forks $\frac{2}{3}$ up one prong Short the other round & Sharp arched, and is imediately above its Eyes the Colour is a light gray with black behind its ears down its neck, and its face white round its neck, its Sides and its rump round its tail which is Short & white: Verry actively made, has only a pair of hoofs to each foot, his brains on the back of his head, his Norstrals large, his eyes like a Sheep he is more like the Antilope or Gazella of **Africa** than any other Species of Goat. Shields killed a *Hare* like the mountain hare of Europe, waighing $6\frac{1}{4}$ pounds (altho pore) his head narrow, its ears large i, e. 6 Inches long & 3 Inches Wide one half of each White, the other & out part a lead Grey from the toe of the hind foot to toe of the for foot is 2 feet 11 Inches, the hith is 1 foot 1 Inch & $\frac{3}{4}$, his tail long thick & white.¹

The rain Continued the Greater part of the day in My ramble I observed, that all those parts of the hills which was clear of Grass easily dissolved and washed into the river and bottoms, and those hils under which the river runs, Sliped into it and dissolves and mixes with the water of the river, the bottoms of the river was covered with the water and mud frome the hills about three Inches deep, those bottoms under the hils which is covered with Grass, also receives a great quantity of mud.

Passed 2 Small Creeks on the L. S. and Camped below the third, (the place that Shannon the man who went a head lived on grapes) Som heavy Showers of rain all wet, had the Goat & rabit Stufed rained all night.

¹ The northern jackass-rabbit (*Lepus campestris*). — Ed.

Course Distance & references 15th Sep^t

N. 50° E	2	M ^{ls} to the p ^t Mouth of White River (1) L. S. passed Sand bars, & ^c
N. 26° E	1½	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S.
N. 10° W.	½	M ^{ls} on the L. S. to the Commencement of a Bluff of black Slate
N. 30° W.	2	M ^{ls} to the lower p ^t of an Island Situated near the L Side (2)
North	2	Miles to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. a point
	<hr style="width: 100%; border: 0; border-top: 1px solid black; margin: 0;"/> 8	of high land opposit under which we camped.

15th September Saturday 1804—

Set out early passed the mo. of the Creek, and the mouth of White river. (1) Cap. Lewis and my self went up this river a Short distance and crossed, found that this differed very much from the Plat or que courre, threw out but little Sand, about 300 yards wide, the water confin^d within 150 yards, the current regular & Swift much resembling the Missouri, with Sand bars from the Points, a Sand Island in the mouth, in the point is a butifull Situation for a Town 3 gradual assents, and a much greater quantity of timber about the mouth of this river than useal, we concluded to send Some distance up this river detached Sj^t Gass & R. Fields. We proceeded on passed a Small (2) Island Covered with Ceeders on [it] I saw great Numbers of Rabits & Grapes, this Island is Small & Seperated from a large Sand Is^d at its upper point by a narrow Channel, & is Situated Nearest the L. Side. Camped on the S. S. opposit the mouth of a large Creek on which there is more timber than is useal on Creeks of this Size, this Creek raised 14 feet the last rains. I killed a Buck Elk & Deer, this evening is verry Cold, Great Many Wolves of Diffrent sorts howling about us. the wind is hard from the NW. this evening.

16th Sep^r

N. 72° E. 1¼ Miles to a pt on the L. S. and came too (1)

16th of September Sunday 1804 —

We Set out verry early & proceed'd on 1¼ Miles between Sand bars and Came too on the L. S. (1) deturmined to dry our wet thi[n]gs and liten the boat which we found Could not proceed with the present load [*as fast as we desired owing to Sand bars*] for this purpose we concluded to detain the Perogue we had intended to send back & load her out of the boat & detain the Soldiers untill Spring & Send them from our Winter quarters. We put out those artcils which was wet, Chan'd the boat & perogues, examined all the Lockers Bails &c &c &c.

This Camp is Situated in a butifull Plain Serounded with Timber to the extent of ¾ of a mile in which there is great quantities of fine Plumbs The two men detach^d up the White river joined us here & informed that the [river] as far as they were up had much the appearance of the Missuorie Som Islands & Sands little Timber, [*Elm*] (much Signs of Beaver, Great many buffalow) & Continud its width, they Saw as well as my self Pine *burs* & Sticks of Birch in the Drift wood up this river, they Saw also Number of Goats, Such as I Killed, also Wolves near the Buffalow. falling [fallow] Deer, & the Barking Squirils Villages. Cap. Lewis went to hunt & See the Countrey near the Kamp he Killed a Buffalow & a Deer

Cloudy all day I partly load the empty Perogue out of the Boat. I killed 2 Deer & the party 4 Deer & a Buffalow this we Kill for the Skins to Cover the Perogues, the meat too pore to eat. Cap. Lewis went on an Island above our Camp, this Island is ab^t one mile long, with a great perpotion Ceder timber near the middle of it.

I gave out a flannel Shirt to each man, & powder to those who had expended thers.

[Lewis:1]

Sunday, September 16th, 1804.

This morning set out at an early hour, and come too at $\frac{1}{2}$ after 7 A. M. on the Lard. shore $1\frac{1}{4}$ miles above the mouth of a small creek which we named *Corvus*,² in consequence of having kiled a beatiful bird of that genus near it. we concluded to ly by at this place the ballance of this day and the next, in order to dry our baggage which was wet by the heavy showers of rain which had fallen within the last three days, and also to lighten the boat by transferring a part of her lading to the red perogue, which we now determined to take on with us to our winter residence wherever that might be; while some of the men were imployed in the necessary labour others were dressing of skins washing and mending their cloaths &c. Capt. Clark and myself kiled each a buck immediately on landing near our encampment; the deer were very gentle and in great numbers in this bottom which had more timber on it than any part of the river we had seen for many days past, consisting of Cottonwood Elm, some indifferent Ash and a considerable quan[tity] of a small species of white oak which [was]³ loaded with acorns of an excellent flavor [having]³ very little of the bitter roughness of the nuts of most species of oak, the leaf of this oak is small pale green and deeply indented, (not copied for Dr. Barton) it seldom rises higher than thirty feet is much branched, the bark is rough and thick and of a light colour; the cup which contains the acorn is fringed on it's edges and imbraces the nut about one half; the acorns were now falling, and we concluded that the number of deer which we saw here had been induced thither by the acorns of which they are remarkably fond. almost every species of wild game is fond of the acorn, the Buffaloe Elk, Deer, bear, turkies, ducks, pigians and even the wolves feed on them; we sent three hunters out who soon added eight deer and two Buffalo to our strock of provisions; the Buffalo

¹ This entry, and another which is here inserted after Clark's for next day (Sept. 17), may be found in a fragment designated as Codex Ba. — Ed.

² This name became Crow Creek on the maps. — Ed.

³ These two words in brackets are conjectural readings, the MS. being torn where they occur. — Ed.



PACHTŪWA-CETĀ
Ant. Brakham's name



PACHTŪWA-CHĪĀ

San. Arukhara Uirwa

were so pour that we took only the tongues skins and marrow bones ; the skins were particularly acceptable as we were in want of a covering for the large perogue to secure the baggage ; the clouds during this day and night prevented my making any observations. Serg^t Gass and Reubin Fields whom we had sent out yesterday to explore the White river returned at four oclock this day and reported that they had followed the meanders of that stream about 12 miles it's general course [is] West, the present or principal channel 150 yards wide ; the coulour of the water and rapidity and manner of runing resembled the Missouri precisely ; the country broken on the border of the river about a mile, when the level planes commence and extend as far as the eye can reach on either side ; as usual no timber appeared except such as from the steep declivities of hills, or their moist situations, were sheltered from the effects of the fire. these extensive planes had been lately birnt and the grass had sprung up and was about three inches high. vast herds of Buffaloe deer Elk and Antilopes were seen feeding in every direction as far as the eye of the observer could reach.

White River 17th Sep^r Plomb Camp.

Course Distance & refference

[Not given.—Ed.]

17th of September Monday 1804—

Dried all our wet articles, this fine Day, Cap^t Lewis went out with a View to See the Countrey and its productions, he was out all day he killed a Buffalow and a remarkable *Bird* (*Magpy*) of the *Corvus* Species long tail the upper part of the feathers & also the wings is of a purplish variated Green, the back & a part of, the wing feathers are white edged with black, white belly, while from the root of the wings to Center of the back is White, the head nake [neck — Ed.] breast & other parts are black the Beeke like a Crow. ab^t the Size of a large Pigion. a butifull thing.

I took equal altitudes and a meridian altitude. Cap: Lewis returned at Dark, Colter Killed a Goat like the one I killed and a curious kind of Deer (*Mule Deer*) of a Dark gray Col: more so than common, hair long & fine, the ears large & long, a Small reseptical under the eyes; like an Elk, the Taile about the length of Common Deer, round (like a Cow) a tuft of black hair about the end, this Spec[i]es of Deer jumps like a goat or Sheep

8 fallow Deer 5 Common & 3 Buffalow killed to day. Cap: Lewis saw a *hare* & killed a Rattle snake in a village of B.[arking—Ed.] Squarels the wind from S. W. Dried our provisions, Some of which was much Damaged.

[Lewis:]

Monday September 17th. 1804.

Having for many days past confined myself to the boat, I determined to devote this day to amuse myself on shore with my gun and view the interior of the country lying between the river and the Corvus Creek. accordingly before sunrise I set out with six of my best hunters, two of whom I dispatched to the lower side of Corvus creek, two with orders to hunt the bottums and woodland on the river, while I retained two others to accompany me in the intermediate country. one quarter of a mile in rear of our camp which was situated in a fine open grove of cotton wood passed a grove of plumb trees loaded with fruit and now ripe, observed but little difference between this fruit and that of a similar kind common to the Atlantic States. the trees are smaller and more thickly set. this forrest of plumb trees garnish a plain about 20 feet more elevated than that on which we were encamped; this plain extends back about a mile to the foot of the hills one mile distant and to which it is gradually ascending this plane extends with the same bredth from the creek below to the distance of near three miles above parrallel with the river, and it is intirely occupied by the burrows of the *barking squiril* hertefore described; this anamal appears here in infinite numbers and the shortness and virdu[r]e of grass gave the

plain the appearance throughout it's whole extent of beatifull bowling-green in fine order. it's aspect is S. E. a great number of wolves of the small kind, hawks [hawks — Ed.] and some pole-cats were to be seen. I presume that those anamals feed on this squirril. found the country in every direction for about three miles intersected with deep revenes and steep irregular hills of 100 to 200 feet high; at the tops of these hills the country breakes of[f] as usual into a fine leavel plain extending as far as the eye can reach. from this plane I had an extensive view of the river below, and the irregular hills which border the opposite sides of the river and creek. the surrounding country had been birnt about a month before and young grass had now sprung up to hight of 4 Inches presenting the live green of the spring to the West a high range of hills, strech across the country from N. to S. and appeared distant about 20 miles; they are not very extensive as I could plainly observe their rise and termination no rock appeared on them and the sides were covered with virdu[r]e similar to that of the plains this senery already rich pleasing and beatiful was still farther hightened by immense herds of Buffaloe, deer Elk and Antelopes which we saw in every direction feeding on the hills and plains. I do not think I exagerate when I estimate the number of Buffaloe which could be compre[hend]ed at one view to amount to 3000. my object was if possible to kill a female Antelope having already procured a male; I pursued my rout on this plain to the west flanked by my two hunters untill eight in the morning when I made the signal for them to come to me which they did shortly after. we rested our selves about half an hour, and regailed ourselves on half a bisquit each and some jirks of Elk which we had taken the precaution to put in our pouches in the morning before we set out, and drank of the water of a small pool which had collected on this plain from the rains which had fallen some days, before. we had now after various windings in pursuit of several herds of antelopes which we had seen on our way made the distance of about eight miles from our camp. we found the Antelope extreemly shy and watchfull insomuch that we had been unable to get a shot at them; when at rest

they generally select the most elevated point in the neighbourhood, and as they are watchfull and extremely quick of sight and their sense of smelling very acute it is almost impossible to approach them within gunshot; in short they will frequently discover and flee from you at the distance of three miles. I had this day an opportunity of witnessing the agility and the superior fleetness of this animal which was to me really astonishing. I had pursued and twice surprised a small herd of seven, in the first instance they did not discover me distinctly and therefore did not run at full speed, tho' they took care before they rested to gain an elevated point where it was impossible to approach them under cover, except in one direction and that happened to be in the direction from which the wind blew towards them; had as the chance to approach them was, I made the best of my way towards them, frequently peeping over the ridge with which I took care to conceal myself from their view the male, of which there was but one, frequently incircled the summit of the hill on which the females stood in a group, as if to look out for the approach of danger. I got within about 200 paces of them when they smelt me and fled; I gained the top of the eminence on which they stood, as soon as possible from whence I had an extensive view of the country the antilopes which had disappeared in a steep reveene now appeared at the distance of about three miles on the side of a ridge which passed obliquely across me and extended about four miles. so soon had these antelopes gained the distance at which they had again appeared to my view I doubted at first that they were the same that I had just surprised, but my doubts soon vanished when I beheld the rapidity of their flight along the ridge before me it appeared rather the rappid flight of birds than the motion of quadrupeds. I think I can safely venture the asserction that the speed of this animal is equal if not superior to that of the finest blooded courser. this morning I saw¹

¹ The sentence remains unfinished. At the bottom of the page is a memorandum: "This a part of N^o. 2." — Ed.

Course Distance & references 18th Sep^r

N. 45° E.	1	M to the lower p ^t of an Island (1)
N. 25° E.	2	Miles to a p ^t on the L. S. passed the Isl ^d at one mile and some Sand bars making from it, a Creek on the S. S. ops ^d the upper point.
N. 14° E.	1 ½	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of Willows on the L. Side.
N. 10. W.	1 ½	M ^{ls} to a point of wood on the L. S.
N. 22. W.	1	Mile to a p ^t on the L. S. and the upper part of the timber.
	<u>7</u>	

September 18th Tuesday 1804—

Wind from the N W. we Set out early the boat much lightened, the wind a head proceed on verry Slowly (1) Passed an Island about the middle of the river at 1 Mile this Island is about a Mile long, and has a great perpotion of red Ceder on it,¹ a Small Creek comes in on the S. S. opposit the head of the Island, proceeded on passed many Sand bars and Camped on the L. S. before night the wind being verry hard & a head all Day. the hunters Killed 10 Deer to day and a Prarie wolf, had it all jurked & Skins Stretch^d after Camping.

I walked on Shore Saw Goats, Elk, Buffalow, Black tail Deer, & the Common Deer, I Killed a Prarie Wolff, about the Size of a gray fox bushey tail head & ears like a Wolf, Some fur Burrows in the ground and barks like a Small Dog.

What has been taken heretofore for the Fox was those Wolves, and no Foxes has been Seen; The large Wolves are verry numourous, they are of a light col^r large & has long hair with Coarse fur.²

Some Goats of a Different Kind wer Seen yesterday great many Porcupin rabbits & Barking Squirils in this quarter. Plumbs & grapes.

¹ On this island was the old site of Fort Recovery; on the west bank of the river was Fort Cedar (aux Cédres), a post of the Missouri Fur Company. — COUES (L. and C., i, p. 122).

² The prairie wolf, or coyote (*Canis latrans*), and the great gray Western wolf (*C. lupus occidentalis*); the latter was wont to prowl about buffalo herds. — ED.

	Course	Distance & references	Sep ¹⁹ th
N. 50° W.	3	Miles to a p ^t of wood on the S. S. opposit is a Bluff on L. S. (1)	
North	4	Miles to the Lower p ^t of prospect Island ops ^d the 3 rivers on the S. S. (2)	
N. 30° W.	2½	Miles to the Upper p ^t of the Island ps ^d the 3 rivers. (2)	
N. 43° W.	2	Miles on the L. S. pass ^d a Creek (3)	
N. 54° W.	3	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the S. S.	
N. 70° W.	5	M ^{ls} to a Bluff on the L. S. pass ^d a Creek (4)	
West	- 3½	M ^{ls} to a timber on the L. S. pass ^d a Creek (5)	
N. 50° W.	3¼	M ^{ls} to the Upper p ^t of an Island at the Commencem ^t of the Big bend. (6)	
		<u>26¼</u>	

19th of September Wednesday 1804—

Set out early, a cool morning verry clear the wind from the S. E. a Bluff on the L. S. here commences a Butifull Countrey on both Sides of the Missouri. (2) pass^d a large Island called Prospect Island opposit this Is^d the 3 rivers Coms in, passing thro a butifull Plain, here I walked on Shore & Killed a fat Cow & Sent her to the boat and proceeded on to the first of the 3 rivers, this river is about 35 yards wide contains a good deel of water, I walked up this river 2 miles & cross, the bottom is high and rich Some timber, I crossed & returned to the mouth, & proceeded up one mile to the 2^d river which is Small 12 yards wide, and on it but little timber, on this Creek the Sioux has frequently Camped, as appears by the Signs. the lands between those two Creeks is a purpendicular bluff of about 80 feet with a butifull Plain & gentle assent back. a Short distance above the 2nd a 3rd Creek Comes into the river in 3 places scattering its waters over the large timbered bottom, this Creek is near the Size of the Middle Creek Containing a greater quantity of water, those rivers is the place that all nations who meet are at peace with each other, called the Seoux pass of the 3 rivers.¹

¹ Thus named, "as the Sioux generally cross the Missouri at this place. These streams have the same right of asylum, though in a less degree than Pipestone Creek already mentioned."—BIDDLE (i. p. 76).

The present names of these streams are (in ascending order) Crow, Wolf, and

The boat proceeded on pass^d the Island (3) passed a Creek 15 yds. Wide on the L. Side (4) passed a Creek on the L. S. 20 yards wide which I call Elm Creek passing thro' a high Plain (5) passed a Creek on the L. S. 18 y^{ds} above which the boat Came too, I joined them late at night, and Call this Creek Night Creek the wind favourable all Day, I killed a fat buck Elk late and could only get his Skin and a Small part of his flesh to Camp. My Servent Killed a Buck, the Crew in the boat Killed 2 buffalow in the river. The Hunters on Shore Killed 4 Deer with black tails one of which was a Buck with two main Prongs on each Side forked equally, which I never before Seen. I saw Several large gangs of Buffalow 2 large Herds of Elk & goats &c. (6) pass a Small Island on the S. S. opposit to this Island on the L. S. a Creek of about 10 yards wide Coms in passing thro a plain in which great quantites of the Prickley Pear grows, I call this Creek *Prickley Pear Creek*, this Isl^d is called the lower Island it is Situated at the Commencement of what is Called & Known by the *Grand de Tortu* [*Detour*] or *Big Bend* of the Missouri.

Course Distance and references — 20th Sept. (Big Bend)

From the lower Islands upper p^t

North	4	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L. S. Passed one on the S. S. above the Island about one & $\frac{1}{2}$ M ^{ls}
N. 10° W.	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} on the L. Side
N. 22° W.	3	M ^{ls} on the L. Side p ^d a s ^d b ^t
N. 60° W	2	M ^{ls} on the L. Side.
West	3	M ^{ls} on the L. S.
S. 73° W.	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} on the L. Side
South	4	M ^{ls} on the L. S. passed a Small Island on the L. S. a Small run ops ^d S. S. (1)
S. 74° E.	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} to a p ^t of wood on the L. S. Camped (2)
S. 56° E.	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the S. S. ops ^d a high hill (3)
S. 28° E.	2	M ^{ls} to a Ceder Valey in a bend on the L. S. at this place the gorge is 2000 y ^{ds}
	<u>30</u>	

Campbell creeks. The first named is the location of Crow Creek Indian Agency and Fort Thompson. — Ed.

20th of September, Thursday 1804—

a fair morning wind from the S. E. detached 2 men to the 1st Creek above the big bend with the horse to hunt and wait our arrival proceeded on passed the lower Island opposit which the Sand bars are very thick & the water Shoal. I walked on Shore with a view of examening this bend crossed at the Narost part which is a high irregular hills of about 180 or 190 feet, this place the gouge of the bend is 1 Mile & a quarter (from river to river or across,) from this high land which is only in the Gouge, the bend is a Butifull Plain thro which I walked, Saw numbers of Buffalow & Goats, I saw a Hare & believe he run into a hole in the Side of a hill, he run up this hill which is Small & has several holes on the Side & I could not see him after, I joined the boat in the evening. passed a Small Island on the L. S. in the N. W. extremity of the bend Called Solitary Island, and Camped late on a Sand Bar near the S. S. R. Fields Killed 1 Deer & 2 Goats one of them a female She Differs from the Mail as to Size being Smaller, with Small Horns, Streight with a Small Prong without any black about the Neck. None of those Goats has any Beard, they are all Keenly made [delicately formed. — BIDDLE], and is butifull.

Course Distance and reff^s — 21st Sep^t

S. 70° W.	4½	Miles to the Upper part of a Ceder bottom on the L. S. passed Several Sand bars on both Sides.
N. 50° W.	2½	Miles to a tree on the S. S. passing over a Willow Island & a Creek on the L. S. (1)
West	4½	Miles to a point of Timber on the L. S. Passed Sand bars the river here is verry Shoal and about a Mile Wide. (2) Passed large hard Stone on the Shore on each Side, a Mock Island on the S. S.
	<u>11½</u>	

21st of September Friday 1804—

at half past one o'clock this morning the Sand bar on which we Camped began to under mind and give way which alarmed the Serjeant on Guard, the motion of the boat awakened me; I got up & by the light of the moon observed that the Sand

had given away both above and below our Camp & was falling in fast. I ordered all hands on as quick as possible & pushed off, we had pushed off but a few minits before the bank under which the Boat & perogus lay give way, which would Certainly have Sunk both Perogues, by the time we made the ops^d Shore our Camp fell in, we made a 2^d Camp for the remainder of the night. & at Daylight proceeded on to the Gouge of this Great bend and Brackfast, we Sent a man to Measure (step off) the Distance across the gouge, he made it 2,000 yd^s, The distance around is 30 M^l. The hills extend thro: the Gouge and is about 200 foot above the water. in the bend as also the opposit Sides both above and below the bend is a butifull inclined Plain, in which there is great numbers of Buffalow, Elk & Goats in view feeding & scipping on those Plains Grouse, Larks & the Prarie bird is Common in those Plains.

We proceeded on passed a (1) Willow Island below the mouth of a Small river called Tylors R about 35 Y^l wide which Coms in on the L. S. 6 Miles above the Gouge of the bend, at the Mouth of this river the two hunters a head left a Deer & its Skin also the Skin of a White wolf. We observe an emence number of Plover of Different kind collecting and taking their flight Southerly, also Brants, which appear to move in the Same Direction. The Cat fish is Small and not so plenty as below.

(2) The Shore on each Side is lined with hard rough Gulley Stone of different Sises, which has roled from the hills & out of Small brooks, Ceder is Common here, This day is warm, the wind which is not hard blows from the S. E., we Camped at the lower point of the Mock Island on the S. S. this now Connected with the main land, it has the appearance of once being an Island detached from the main land Covered with tall Cotton Wood. We Saw Some Camps and tracks of the Seaux which appears to be old, three or four weeks ago, one frenchman I fear has got an abscess on his they [thigh — ED.], he Complains verry much we are makeing every exertion to relieve him

The Praries in this quarter Contains great q^{ty} of Prickley Pear.

Course Distance & references — 22nd

S. 72° W.	5	Miles to a point on the S. S. Passing under a high bluff on the L. Side (1)
West	1	Mile on the S. S. a bottom commencing on the L. S. at the end of this Course
N. 38° W.	4½	Miles to a pt of timber on the S. S. opposit the Lower pt of Ceder Island passed two Islands on the L. S. one ½ a Mile & the other 3 Miles long called the 3 Sisters ops ^d a large Creek coms in (2)
N. 30° W.	3	Miles to a pt on S. S. passed Ceeder Island Situated nearest the S. S. a trading house (3)
N. 22° E.	$\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{16}$	Miles to a timber opposit the Lower (L. S.) pt. of a Small Island called Goat Island. (4)

22nd of September Saturday 1804 —

a thick fog this morning detained us untill 7 oClock passed a butifull inclined Prarie on both Sides in which we See great numbers of Buffalow feeding. (1) took the Meridean altitude of the Suns Upper Limb 92°. 50' 00". [with] the Sextent the Lat^d produced from this Obevation is 44° 11' 33" $\frac{3}{10}$ North.

(2) passed a Small Island on the L. S. immediately above passed a Island Situated nearest the L. S. ab^t 3 Miles long, behind this Is^d on the L. S. a Creek Comes in about 15 yards wide, this Creek and Island are Called the 3 Sisters, a buti- full Plain on both Sides of the river.

(3) passed a Island Situated nearest the S. S. imediately above the last Called Ceder Island this Island is about 1½ miles long & nearly as wide Covered with Ceder, on the South Side of this Island Mr. Louiselle a trader from S^t Louis built a fort of Ceder¹ & a good house to trade with the Seaux & Wintered last winter; about this fort I observed a number of Indian Camps in a Conecal form. they fed their horses on Cotton limbs as appears. here our hunters us joined haveing

¹ Gass (p. 58) thus describes this post: "The space picketed in is about 65 or 70 feet square, with sentry-boxes in two of the angles. The pickets are 13½ feet above ground. In this square he built a house 45½ by 32½ feet, and divided it into four equal parts, one for goods, one to trade in, one to be used as a common hall, and the other for a family-house." — ED.

killed 2 Deer & a Beaver, they Complain much of the Mineral Substances in the barren hills over which they passed Destroying their mockessons.

(4) we proceeded on and Camp^d late on the S. Side below a Small Island in the bend S. S. Called Goat Island, The large Stones which lay on the Sides of the banks in Several places lay some distance in the river, under the water and is dangerous. &c.

I walked out this evening and killed a fine Deer the Musquitters is verry troublesom in the bottoms.

Course Distance & referencies. — 23rd Sep^r

N. 46° W.	3 $\frac{3}{4}$	Miles to the Mouth of a Creek in the bend to the S. S. passed an Isl ^d on the S. S. (1) & Sands.
S. 46° W.	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	Miles to a Coaps of Wood at a Spring in a bend to the L. S.
N. 80° W.	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	Miles to the lower p ^t of a large Island (2) passed 2 Willow Islands & Several Bars.
N. 85° W.	5	Miles to a p ^t on the L. S. pass upper p. of Elk Island at 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles. Several Sands
West	$\frac{5}{20}$	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S. below a Creek on the L. S. passed a Creek on the S. S. (3)

23rd of September Sunday 1804 —

Set out under a gentle breeze from the S. E. (1) passed a Small Island Situated in a bend to the L. S. Called Goat Island, a Short distance above the upper point a Creek of 12 yards wide Coms in on the S. S. we observed a great Smoke to the S. W. I walked on Shore & observed Buffalow in great Herds at a distance

(2) passed two Small Willow Islands with large Sand bars making out from them, passed (2) Elk Island about 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles long & $\frac{3}{4}$ Mile Wide Situated near the L. S. Covered with Cotton Wood the read Currents Called by the french Gres de Buff.¹ & grapes &c. &c.

¹ [Memoranda by Clark on the inside of front cover and fly-leaf of Codex C:] The Mandans call a red berry common to the upper part of the Missouri *āi-sāy*. The red Berry is called by the Rees Nar-nis the engages call the same Berry Grease de Buff—grows in great abundance & makes a Delightfull Tart.

the river is nearly Straight for a great distance wide and Shoal (4) passed a Creek on the S. S. 16 yards wide we Call Reuben Creek,¹ as R. Fields found it. Camped on the S. S. below the mouth of a Creek on the L. S. three Souex boys Came to us Swam the river and inform^d that the Band of Seaux called the *Tetongues* (*Tetons*) of 80 Lodges were Camped at the next Creek above, & 60 Lodges more a Short distance above, we gave those boys two Carrots of Tobacco to Carry to their Chiefs, with directions to tell them that we would Speak to them tomorrow

Cap^t Lewis walked on Shore this evening, R. F. Killed a Doe Goat,

Course Distance & reffurence — 24th Sept^r

N. 80° W.	3	Miles a p ^t on the S. S.
West	2½	Miles to the S. S. right of a Isl ^d Situated on the L. S. (1)
West	4	Miles to a Point on the S. S. passed the Island on the L. S.
S. 85° W.	4	Miles to the Mouth of a River Called by Evens ² Little Missouri I call it the Teton river as the Teton Bands of the Soux reside on it (2)
	13	

24th September Monday 1804 —

Set out early a fair day the wind from the E. pass the mouth of Creek on the L. S. Called Creek on high Water, (*High Water*) passed (1) a large Island on the L. S. about 2 Miles & ½ long on which Colter had Camped & Killed 4 Elk, the wind fair from the S. E. we prepared Some Clothes and a few Meadels for the Chiefs of the Teton's bands of Seoux which we expect to See to day at the next river, observe a great Deel of Stone on the Sides of the hills on the S. S. we Saw one Hare, to day, prepared all things for

¹ Now East Medicine Knoll River (a translation of its Indian name); across the Missouri here was the site of old Fort George. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 127).

² Probably referring to a map cited by Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. xxiii), as made by one Evans in 1804, showing the Missouri River to the Mandans. See our atlas volume, for maps which Lewis and Clark both took with them and made upon the Expedition; one of the former was probably a copy of the Evans map. — ED.

Action in Case of necessity, our Perogus went to the Island for the Meet, Soon after the man on Shore run up the bank and reported that the Indians had Stolen the horse We Soon after Met 5 Ind^s and ankered out Som distance & Spoke to them informed them we were friends, & Wished to Continue So but were not afraid of any Indians, Some of their young men had taken the horse Sent by their Great father for their Cheif and we would not Speek to them untill the horse was returned to us again.

passed (2) a Island on the S. S. on which we Saw Several Elk, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ Miles long Called Good humered [*humoured*] Isl^d Came to about $1\frac{1}{2}$ Miles above off the Mouth of a Small river about 70 yards wide Called by Mr. Evens the Little Mississou [*Missouri*] River, The Tribes of the Seaux Called the Teton, is Camped about 2 Miles up on the N. W. Side, and we Shall Call the River after that Nation, *Teton*¹ This river is 70 yards wide at the mouth of Water, and has a considerable Current we anchored off the mouth

the french Perogue Come up early in the day, the other did not Get up untill in the evening Soon after we had Come too. I went & Smoked with the Chiefs who came to See us here all well, we prepare to Speek with the Indians tomorrow at which time we are informed the Indians will be here, the French Man who had for Some time been Sick, began to bleed which allarmed him $\frac{2}{3}$ of our party Camped on board the remainder with the Guard on Shore.

¹ Also known as Bad River. Near its mouth was Fort Pierre (begun in 1831), named for Pierre Chouteau. — Ed.

CHAPTER IV

FROM TETON RIVER TO THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25—October 26, 1804
Order by Lewis, October 13

[Clark:]

25th Sept. —

A FAIR Morning the Wind from the S. E. all well, raised a Flag Staff & made a orning or Shade on a Sand bar in the mouth of Teton River, for the purpose of Speaking with the Indians under, the Boat Crew on board at 70 yards Distance from the bar The 5 Indians which we met last night Continued, about 11 OClock the 1st & 2^d Chief Came we gave them Some of our Provisions to eat, they gave us great Quantitis of Meet Some of which was Spoiled we feel much at a loss for the want of an interpetter the one we have can Speek but little.

Met in Council at 12 oClock and after Smokeing, agreeable to the usual Custom, Cap. Lewis proceeded to Deliver a Speech which we [were — E.D.] oblige[d] to Curtail for want of a good interpetter all our party paraded. gave a Medal to the Grand Chief Call^d in Indian *Un ton gar Sar bar* in French *Beuffe nure* [Beuffe noir] Black Buffalow. Said to be a good Man, 2^[nd] Chief *Torto hon gar* or the *Parti sin* or Partizan *bad* the 3^d is the Beffe De Medison [Beuffe de Medecine] his name is *Tar ton gar Wa ker* 1^[st] Considerable Man, *War zing go.* 2^[nd] Considerable Man *Second Bear* — *Mato co que par.*

Envited those Cheifs on board to Show them our boat and such Curiossities as was Strange to them, we gave them $\frac{1}{4}$ a glass of whiskey which they appeared to be verry fond of, Sucked the bottle after it was out & Soon began to be troublesome, one the 2^d Chief assumeing Drunkness, as a Cloake for his rascally intentions I went with those Cheifs (*in one of the*

Perogues with 5 men — 3 & 2 Ind^s) (which left the boat with great reluctance) to Shore with a view of reconciling those men to us, as Soon as I landed the Perogue three of their young Men Seased the Cable of the Perogue, (*in which we had presents &c*) the Chiefs Sold^d [*each Chief has a soldier*] Hugged the mast, and the 2^d Chief was verry insolent both in words & justures (*pretended Drunkenness & staggered up against me*) declaring I should not go on, Stateing he had not received presents sufficient from us, his justures were of Such a personal nature I felt My self Compeled to Draw my Sword (*and Made a Signal to the boat to prepare for action*) at this Motion Cap^t Lewis ordered all under arms in the boat, those with me also Showed a Disposition to Defend themselves and me, the grand Chief then took hold of the roap & ordered the young Warrers away, I felt My Self warm & Spoke in verry positive terms.

Most of the Warriars appeared to have ther Bows strung and took out their arrows from the quiver. as I (*being surrounded*) was not permitted (*by them*) to return, I Sent all the men except 2 Inp^s [*Interpreters*] to the boat, the perogue Soon returned with about 12 of our determined men ready for any event. this movement caused a no: of the Indians to withdraw at a distance, (*leaving their chiefs & soldiers alone with me*). Their treatment to me was verry rough & I think justified roughness on my part, they all lift my Perogue, and Council^d with themselves the result I could not lern and nearly all went off after remaining in this Situation Some time I offered my hand to the 1. & 2. Chiefs who refus^d to receive it. I turned off & went with my men on board the perogue, I had not pros^d more the [*than*] 10 paces before the 1st Cheif 3rd & 2 Brave Men Waded in after me. I took them in & went on board¹

We proceeded on about 1 Mile. & anchored out off a Willow Island placed a guard on Shore to protect the Cooks & a guard in the boat, fastened the Perogues to the boat, I call this Island bad humered Island as we were in a bad humer.

¹ This paragraph is misplaced in the MS.; it is written on the next page after that containing the first part of this council with the Indians. We have placed it in proper position. — ED.

Course Distance & reffurances — 26th Sept 1804 bad^d Is^d

N. 28^o W. 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles to a p^t on the L. S. passing a Small Willow Island at 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles & Several Sand bars the Water Shallow came too (1)

26th of September Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on and Came to by the Wish of the Chiefs for to let their Squars [squaws] & boys see the Boat and Suffer them to treat us well great numbers of men womin & children on the banks viewing us, these people Shew great anxiety, they appear Spritely, Generally ill looking & not well made their legs [*& arms*] Small generally, [*high cheek bones, prominent eyes*] they Grese & Black [*paint*] themselves [*with coal*] when they dress [*the disting^d men*] make use of a hawks feathers [*Calumet feather adorned with porcupine quills & fastened to the top of the head & falls backwards*] about their heads. the men [wear] a robe & each a polecats Skin, for to hold ther *Barwe roley* [*Bois roule*] for Smoking,¹ fond of Dress & Show badly armed with fuses, &c. The Squaws are Chearfull fine look'g womin not handsome, High Cheeks Dressed in Skins a Peticcoat and roab which foldes back over ther Sholder, with long wool, do all their laborious work & I may Say perfect Slaves to the Men, as all Squars of Nations much at War, or where the Womin are more noumerous than the men.² after Coming too Cap^t Lewis & 5 men went on Shore with the Cheifs, who appeared disposed to make up & be friendly, after Captain Lewis had been on Shore about 3 hours I became uneasy for fear of Deception & Sent a Serjeant to See him and know his treatment which he reported was friendly, & they were preparing for a Dance this evening The[y] made frequent Selicitations for us to remain one night only and let them Show their good

¹ *Bois roulé*, literally "rolled wood," — better known by its Algonkin name, *Kinikini* (Kinnikinnic), — a mixture of tobacco with scrapings or shavings from various woods, especially that of sumac, red osier, and other dogwoods, and bearberry. — Ed.

² Biddle describes in much greater detail (i, pp. 84-90) the costumes and mode of life of these Teton Indians. — Ed.



MĀNDEH PĀRCHU (*A young Mandan Indian*)



MÁNDEH PÁHCHU (*A young Mandan Indian*)

disposition towards us, we deturmined to remain, after the return of Cap^t Lewis, I went on Shore on landing I was received on a elegant painted B.[uffalo] Robe & taken to the Village by 6 Men & was not permitted to touch the ground untill I was put down in the grand Concill house on a White dressed Robe. I saw Several Maha Prissners and Spoke to the Chiefs [telling them that — E.D.] it was necessary to give those prisoners up & become good friends with the Mahas if they wished to follow the advice of their great father I was in Several Lodges neetly formed as before mentioned as to the Baureily (*Bois brûlé* — Yankton) Tribe. I was met (*on landing from the boat*) by about 10 Well Dress^d young Men who took me up in a roabe Highly adecrated and Set me Down by the Side of their Chief on a Dressed Robe in a large Council House, this house formed a $3\frac{1}{4}$ Circle of Skins Well Dressed and Sown together under this Shelter about 70 Men Set forming a Circle in front of the Cheifs a plac of 6 feet Diameter was Clear and the pipe of peace raised on (*forked*) Sticks (*about 6 or 8 inches from the ground*) under which there was swans down scattered, on each Side of this Circle two Pipes, the (*two*) flags of Spain 2 & the Flag we gave them in front of the Grand Chief a large fire was near in which provisions were Cooking, in the Center about 400^{lb} of excellent Buffalo Beef as a present for us. Soon after they Set me Down, the Men went for Cap^t Lewis brought him in the same way and placed him also by the Chief in a few minits an old man rose & Spoke aprobeing what we had done & informing us of their situation requesting us to take pity on them & which was answered. The great Chief then rose with great State [speaking — E.D.] to the Same purpote as far as we Could learn & then with Great Solemnity took up the pipe of Peace & after pointing it to the heavins the 4 quarters of the Globe & the earth, he made Some disertation, (*then made a Speech*) lit it and presented the Stem to us to Smoke, when the Principal Chief Spoke with the Pipe of Peace he took in one hand some of the most Delicate parts of the Dog which was prepared for the fest & made a Sacrefise to the flag. [this sentence misplaced in MS., but properly placed by us. — E.D.]

after A Smoke had taken place, & a Short Harange to his people, we were requested to take the Meal (& then put before us the dog which they had been cooking, & Pemitigon¹ & ground potatoe in Several platters Pemⁿ. is Buffⁿ meat dried or jerked pounded & mixed with grease raw. Dog Sioux think great dish used on festivals eat little of dog—pemⁿ. & porⁿ good.) We Smoked for an hour (till) Dark & all was Cleared away a large fire made in the Center, about 10 Musitions playing on tambereens (made of hoops & Skin stretched), long Sticks with Deer & Goats Hoofs tied so as to make a gingling noise, and many others of a Similer Kind, those Men began to Sing, & Beet on the Tamboren, the Women Came foward highly Deckerated in their Way, with the Scalps and Tropies of War of their fathers Husbands Brothers or near Connections & proceeded to Dance the War Dance (Women only dance jump up & down—five or six young men selected accompanied with every the tamborin making the song extempore words & music every now & then one of the com^r come out & repeat some exploit in a sort of song—this taken up by the young men and the women dance to it) which they done with great Chearfullness untill about 12 oClock when we informed the Cheifs that they were [must be] fatigued [amusing us] &c. they then retired & we Accom^d by 4 Cheifs returned to our boat, they Stayed with us all night. Those people have Some brave men which they make use of as Soldiers those men attend to the police of the Village Correct all errors I saw one of them to day whip 2 Squars, who appeared to have fallen out, when he approach^d all about appeared to flee with great turrow [terror]. at night they keep two 3, 4 5 men at different Distances walking around Camp Singing the accurrunces of the night

All the Men on board 100 paces from Shore Wind from the S. E. moderate one man verry sick on board with a Dangerass Abscess on his Hip. All in Spirits this evening.

In this Tribe I saw 25 Squars and Boys taken 13 days ago in a battle with the Mahars in this battle they Destroy^d 40 Lodges, Killed 75 Men, & som boys & Children, & took 48

¹ Better known as "pemmican." — Ed.

Prisoners Womin & boys which they promis both Cap! Lewis and my self Shall be Delivered up to Mr. Durion at the Bous rulie (*Bois brulé*) Tribe,¹ those are a retched and Dejected looking people the Squars appear low & Corse but this is an unfavourable time to judge of them

We gave our Mahar intep^r some fiew articles to give those Squars in his name Such as Alls, needles &c. &c.

I saw & eat Pemitigon the Dog, Grou^d potatoe made into a Kind of homney, which I thought but little inferior. I also Saw a Spoon Made of a horn of an Animell of the Sheep Kind (*the mountain ram of Argalia*²) the Spoon will hold 2 quarts.

27th of Sept. Thursday 1804 —

I rose early after a bad nights Sleep found the Chief[s] all up, and the bank as useal lined with Spectators we gave the 2 great Cheifs a Blanket a peace, or rether they took off agreeable to their Custom the one they lay on and each one Peck of corn. after Brackfast Cap! Lewis & the Cheifs went on Shore, as a verry large part of their nation was coming in, the Disposition of whome I did not know one of us being sufficent on Shore, I wrote a letter to Mr. P. Durion & prepared a meadel & Some Coms^{ns}. (*Certificates*) & Sent to Cap Lewis at 2 oClock Cap! Lewis Returned with 4 Chiefs & a Brave Man (*Consid' Man*) named *War cha pa* or on his Guard when the friends of those people [*the Scioux*] die they run arrows through their flesh above and below their elbows as a testimony of their Greaf.

after Staying about half an hour, I went with them on Shore, Those men left the boat with reluctance, I went first to the 2^d Cheifs Lodge, where a croud came around after Speeking on various Subjects I went to a princpal mans lodge from them to the grand Chiefs lodge, after a few minits he invited me to a Lodge within the Circle in which I Stayed with all their principal Mén untill the Dance began, which was Similer to the one of last night performed by their women with poles

¹ One of the bands of the Teton Sioux. — Ed.

² The Rocky Mountain sheep or argal (*Ovis montana*.) — Ed.

(*in their hands*) on which Scalps of their enemies were hung, Some with the Guns Spears & War empliments of (*taken by*) their husbands [*&c.*] in their hands.

Cap: Lewis Came on Shore and we Continued untill we were Sleepy & returned to our boat, the 2nd Chief & one principal Man accompanied us, Those two Indians accompanied me on board in the Small Perogue; Cap: Lewis with a guard Still on Shore the man who Steered not being much accustomed to Steer, passed the bow of the boat & the peroge Came broad Side against the Cable & broke it which obliged me to order in a loud voice all hands up & at their ores, my preempry order to the men and the bustle of their getting to their ores allarm^d the Cheifs, together with the appearance of the Men on Shore, as the boat turn^d. The Chief hollowaed & allarmed the Camp or Town informing them that the Mahars was about attacking us (*them*). In about 10 minits the bank was lined with men armed the 1st Chief at their head, about 200 men appeared and after about 1/2 hour returned all but about 60 men who continued on the bank all night, the Cheifs Cont^d all night with us. This allarm I as well as Cap: Lewis Considered as the Signal of their intentions (which was to Stop our proceeding on our journey and if Possible rob us) we were on our Guard all night, the misfortune of the loss of our Anchor obliged us to Lay under a falling bank much expos^d to the accomplishment of their hostile intentions. P. C. our Bowman who c^d Speek Mahar informed us in the night that the Maha Prisoners informed him we were to be Stopped. we Shew as little Sighns of a Knowledge of their intentions as possible all prepared on board for any thing which might hapen, we kept a Strong guard all night in the boat, no Sleep

28th of September 1804 Friday—

Made many attemps in different ways to find our anchor, but Could not, the Sand had Covered it, from the Misfortune of last night our boat was laying at Shore in a verry unfavourable Situation, after finding that the anchor Could not be found we deturmined to proceed on, with great difficuelty got

the Chiefs out of our boat, and when we was about Setting out the Class Called the Soldiers took possession of the Cable the 1st Chief which was Still on board, & intended to go a Short distance up with us. I told him the men of his nation Set on the Cable, he went out & told Cap^t Lewis who was at the bow the men Who Set on the roap was Soldiers, and wanted Tobacco Cap^t L. [said] would not agree to be forced into any thing, the 2^d Chief Demanded a flag & Tobacco which we refus^d to Give Stateing proper reasons to them for it after much Dificuelty—which had nearly reduced us to necessity to hostilities I threw a Carrot of Tobacco to 1st Chief took the port fire from the gunner. Spoke so as to touch his pride The Chief gave the Tobacco to his Soldiers & he jerked the rope from them and handed it to the bowsman we then Set out under a Breeze from the S. E. about 2 miles up we observed the 3^d Chief on Shore beckining to us we took him on board he informed us the roap was held by the order of the 2^d Chief who was a Double Spoken man, Soon after we Saw a man Comeing full Speed, thro: the plains left his horse & proceeded across a Sand bar near the Shore we took him on board & observed that he was the Son of the Chief we had on board we Sent by him a talk to the nation Stateint [stating] the cause of our hoisting the red flag und^r the white, if they were for peace Stay at home & do as we had Directed them, if the[y] were for war or were Deturmined to stop us we were ready to defend our Selves, we halted one hour & $\frac{1}{2}$ on the S. S. & made a Substitute of Stones for a anchor, refreshed our men and proceeded on about 2 Miles higher up & Came to a verry Small Sand bar in the middle of the river & Stayed all night, I am verry unwell for want of Sleep Deturmined to Sleep to night if possible, the Men Cooked & we rested well.

Course Distance & ref^s

- N. 33 W. 3 Miles to the extmt^y of a Sand bar on the L. S. passed a Willow Isl^d on the L. S. at the Coms^e of the Course.
 S. 80^o W. $\frac{3}{6}$ M^{ls} to an object on the bank in a bend to the S. S. at
 $\frac{6}{6}$ Some woods, ops^d the High land on the L. S. Camped.

29th of Sep^r. Saturday 1804.—

Set out early Some bad Sand bars, proceeded on at 9 oClock we observed the 2^d Chief & 2 principal Men one Man & a Squar on Shore, they wished to go up with us as far as the other part of their band, which they Said was on the river a head not far Distant we refused Stateing verry Sufficint reasons and was Plain with them on the Subject, they were not pleased observed that they would walk on Shore to the Place we intended to Camp to night, we observed it was not our wish that they Should for if they did we Could not take them or any other Tetons on board except the one we had now with us who might go on Shore whenever he pleased. they proceeded on, the Chief on board ask^d for a twist¹ of Tobacco for those men we gave him $\frac{1}{2}$ of a twist, and Sent one by them for that part of their band which we did not See, & Continued on Saw great numbers of Elk at the mouth of a Small Creek Called No timber C—as no timber appeared to be on it. above the mouth of this Creek (*a Ricara band of*) the Panias had a Village 5 years ago, (*no remains but the mound which surrounded the town.*) The 2^d Cheif came on the Sand bar & requested we would put him across the river, I Sent a Perogue & Crossed him & one Man to the S. S. and proceeded on & Came too on a Sand bar on about $\frac{1}{2}$ Mile from the main Shore & put on it 2 Sentinals Continud all night at anchor (we Substitute large Stones for anchors in place of the one we lost all in high Spirits &c.

Course Distance & reference — 29 Sept^r

S. 60° W.	2	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on S. S. Passing Several Sand bars.
N. 80° W.	1 $\frac{1}{4}$	to a tree on L. S.
N. 16° E.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	to a p ^t on S. S.
N. 8° W.	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. Where the Panias had a Town.
N. 45° E.	2	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L. Side
N. 25° E.	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	Miles to the Lower p ^t of a Willow Island ² in the middle of the river.
	<u>11</u>	

¹ The same as the "carrot" mentioned elsewhere. — Ed.² Now Okobojou. — Ed.

Course Distance & reference — 30th Sep^t

N. 30° W.	3	Miles to a tree at the upper p ^t of some woods on the S. S.
N. 80° W.	1 ½	Miles on the S. S.
N. 64° W.	3	M ^{ls} to a Bush on L. S.
N. 46° W.	1 ½	M ^{ls} on the L. S.
N. 10. W.	3	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the S. S. passed Several Sand bars & the Camp of a Band of Tetons (1)
North	2	Miles to a tree on the S. S.
N. 24° W.	4	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L. S.
N. 50° W.	2 ½	M ^{ls} to the Lower p ^t of Pania Island ¹ situated in the mid ^l of the river (2)
	20 ½	

30th of Sep^t. Sunday 1804 —

Set out this morning early had not proceeded on far before we discovered an Indⁿ running after us, he came up with us at 7 oClock & requested to come on bord and go up to the *Recorces* ² we refused to take any of that band on board if he chose to proceed on Shore it was very Well Soon after I discovered on the hills at a great distance great numbers of Indians which appeared to be makeing to the river above us, we proceeded on under a Double reafed Sail, & some rain at 9 oClock observed a large band of Indians the Same which I had before seen on the hills incamping on the bank the L. S. we Came too on a Sand bar Brackfast & proceeded on & Cast the anchor opposit their Lodge at about 100 yards distant, and informed the Indians which we found to be a part of the Band we had before Seen, that (*we*) took them by the hand and Sent to each Chief a Carrot of tobacco, as we had been treated badly by some of the band below, after Staying 2 days for them, we Could not delay any time, & referred them to Mr. Durion for a full account of us and to here our Talk Sent by him to the Tetons, those were very selicitious for us to land and eate with them, that they were friendly &c. &c. we ap-

¹ Now Cheyenne. — Ed.

² Otherwise called Ricaree, Ree, or, more correctly, Arikara; Lewis says ("Statistical View," p. 23) that they are "the remains of ten large tribes of Panias (Pawnees);" and estimates that they then (1806) numbered 500 warriors, or 2,000 souls. Cf. Biddle's account of their migrations (i, 104). — Ed.

poligised & proceeded on,¹ Sent the Peroge to Shore above with the Tobacco & Deliv^d it to a Sold^r of the Chief with us Several of them ran up the river, the Chf on board threw them out a Small twist of Tobacco & told them to go back & open ther ears. they rec[e]ved the Tobacco & returned to their lodges. we saw great numbers of white Guls This day is Cloudy & rainy. refresh the men with a glass of whisky after Brackfast.

We Saw about 6 Miles above 2 Indians who Came to the bank and looked at us about $\frac{1}{2}$ an hour & went over the hills to the S. W. we proceeded on under a verry Stiff Breeze from the S. E., the Stern of the boat got fast on a log and the boat turned & was verry near filling before we got her righted, the waves being verry high, The Chief on board was So fritened at the Motion of the boat which in its rocking Caused Several loose articles to fall on the Deck from the lockers, he ran off and hid himself, we landed, he got his gun and informed us he wished to return, that all things were cleare for us to go on, we would not see any more Tetons &c. we repeated to him what had been Said before, and advised him to keep his men away, gave him a blanket a Knife & some Tobacco, Smok^d a pipe & he Set out. We also Set Sale and Came to at a Sand bar, & Camped, a verry Cold evening, all on guard.

Course Distance & reffurence — 1st October

N. 80° W.	3	M ^{ls} to the upper p ^t of a large Island in the River. (1) ²
N. 70° W.	2	M ^{ls} to the Mouth of Chien or Dog River ³ on the L. S. (2) ²
N. 16° W.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S. Passed verry bad Sand bars
N. 50° E.	4	Mile to Some Willows on the L. S. passed 2 Creeks on the L. S. the upper Small.
S. 53° E.	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the S. S. passing a Bluff on the L. S.

16

¹ Passed 60 Lodges of Tetons, the remainder of the band. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 225 of Codex C).

² In MS., these figures are misplaced. — ED.

³ Erroneously thus named, from the resemblance of the French word *chien* (dog) to the tribal name Cheyenne. — ED.

Sand bars are So noumerous, that it is impossible to describe them, & think it unnecessary to mention them.

1st of October Monday 1804 —

The wind blew hard all last night from the S. E. very cold Set out early the wind Still hard, passed a large Island in the middle of the river (1) ops^d the lower point of this Island the Recreeres formerly lived in a large Town on the L. S. (*remains only a mound circular walls 3 or 4 feet high*) above the head of the Island about 2 miles we passed the (2) River Chien (or Dog River) (*Chayenne*) L. S. this river Comes in from the S. W. and is about 400 yards wide, the Current appears gentle, throwing out but little Sands, and appears to throw out but little water the heads of this River is not known (*in the second range of the Côte Noir its course generally about East. So called from the Chayenne Indians who live on the heads of it*) a part of the nation of Dog Indians live some distance up this river, the precise distance I cant learn, above the mouth of this river the Sand bars are thick and the water Shoal the river Still very wide and falling a little we are obliged to haul the boat over a Sand bar, after makeing Several attempts to pass. the wind So hard we Came too & Stayed 3 hours after it Slackened a little we proceeded on round a bend, the wind in the after part of the Day a head. (2) passed a Creek on the L. S. which we Call the Sentinal, this part of the river has but little timber, the hills not so high, the Sand bars more numerous, & river more than one mile Wide including the Sand bars. (2) pass a Small Creek above the latter which we Call *lookout C.* Continued on with the wind imediately a head, and Came too on a large Sand bar in the middle of the river, we Saw a man opposit to our Camp on the L. S. which we discov^d to be a Frenchman, a little of [f] (*from Shore among*) the Willows we observed a house, we Call to them to come over, a boy came in a canoe & informed that 2 frenchmen were at the house with good[s] to trade with the Seauex which he expected down from the rickerrees every day, Sever'l large parties of Seauex Set out from the *rees* for this place to trade with those men.

This M^r *Jon Vallie*¹ informs us that he wintered last winter 300 Leagues up the Chien River under the Black mountains, he informs that this river is verry rapid and difiuel^t even for Perogues [*Canoos*] to assend and when rising the Swels is verry high, one hundred Leagues up it forks one fork Comes from the S. the other at 40 Leagues above the forks enters the black Mountain. The Countrey from the Missourie to the black mountains is much like the Countrey on the Missourie, less timber. & a great perpotion of Ceder.

The black mountains he Says is verry high, and Some parts of it has Snow on it in the Summer great quantities of Pine Grow on the Mountains, a great Noise is heard frequently on those Mountains". No beever on Dog river, on the Mountains great numbers of goat, and a kind of anamale with large circular horns, this animale is nearly the Size of an [*Small*] Elk. [*Argalea*] White bears is also plenty The Chien (*Chayenne*) Ind^s are about 300 Lodges² they inhabit this river principally, and Steel horses from the Spanish Settlements, to the S W. this excurtion they make in one month the bottoms & Sides of R Chien is corse gravel. This frenchman gives an account of a white booted turkey an inhabitent of the Cout Noir (*Prairie Cock*)

1st of October Monday 1804 at the Mouth of River Chien or Dog R³—

We proceeded now from the mouth of this river 11 miles and camped on a Sand bar in the river opposit to a Trading house verry windy & cold. *11 miles above — Chien R³ —*

¹ Evidently meant for Jean Vallé — probably a relative of the François Vallé who was commandant at Ste. Genevieve at the time when that post was delivered by the Spaniards to the United States authorities. — Ed.

² The Cheyenne tribe is (like the Arapaho) of Algonquian stock. Powell thinks that these savages, having early separated from their kindred at the North, forced their way through hostile tribes, across the Missouri, into the Black Hills country — thus locating between the Siouan and the Shoshonean tribes. See Mooney's account of this tribe, in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892-93, pp. 1023-1027. — Ed.

³ This paragraph is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — Ed.

Course Distance and referrens. — 2nd of Oct^r

S. 70° E.	2½	Miles to a wood on the L. Side	pass a large Sand bar
			in the middle & a Willow Is ^d close under the L. S.
S. 80° E.	1½	M ^{ls} on the L. S.	
N. 62. E.	2	Miles on the L. S.	a Willow bottom opposit on the S. S.
N. 15 E.	4	Miles to the L. Side of an Island	Situated near the S. S.
		& 1 M ^l above the lower point of the S ^d Island	(1)
N. 28° E.	2	Miles to the p ^t of a Sand bar	Makeing from the head
	12	of the Island & Camped	(2)

2nd of October Tuesday 1804 —

a Violent wind all night from the S. E. Slackened a little and we proceeded on *M. Jon Vallie Came* on board and proceeded on 2 Miles with us, a verry Cold morning Some black Clouds flying took a Meridian altitude & made the Latitude $44^{\circ} 19' 36''$. North this was taken at the upper part of the gouge of the Lookout bend, the Sentinal heard a Shot over the hills to the L. S. dureing the time we were Dineing on a large Sand bar. the after part of this day is pleasent, at 2 oClock opposit a Wood on the L. S. we observed Some Indians on a hill on the S. S. one Came down to the river opposit to us and fired off his gun, & becken^d to us to Come too, we payed no attention to him he followed on Some distance, we Spoke a few words to him, he wished us to go a Shore and to his Camp which was over the hill and Consisted of 20 Lodges,¹ we excused our Selves advised him to go and here our talk of M^r Durion, he enquired for traders we informed him one was in the next bend below. & parted, he returned, & we proceeded on (1) passed a large Island, on the S. S. here we expected the Tetons would attempt to Stop us and under that idear we prepared our selves for action which we expected every moment. ops^d this Island on the L. S. a Small Creek Coms in, This Island we call Is^d of *Caution*² we took in Some wood on a favourable Situation where we Could

¹ Gass says (p. 68): "He said he belonged to the Jonkta or Babarole band," probably referring to the Yankton. — Ed.

² Now Plum Island. — Ed.

defend our Men on Shore & (2) Camped on a Sand bar $\frac{1}{2}$ a Mile from the main Shore the Wind changed to the N. W. & rose verry high and Cold which Continud. The Current of the Missourie is less rapid & Contains much less sediment, of the Same Colour.

2nd of October Tuesday 1804¹—

Proceeded on as mentioned in Journal No. 2 *twelve* miles camped above a large Island on a Sand bar, verry windy and cold the after part of this day, the mid day verry warm. The Lattitude as taken to day is $44^{\circ} 19' 36''$ observe great caution this day expecting the Seaux intentions some what hostile towards our progression, The river not so rapid as below the Chien, its width nearly the same. 12 miles

3^d of October Wednesday 1804. — Wind blew hard all night from the N. W. Some rain and verry Cold we Set out at 7 oClock & proceeded on

N. 50° E. $2\frac{1}{2}$ M's to a p^t of Wood on the L. S.

N. 54° E. 2 Miles to a tree in a bend S. S.

North 2 Miles to a p^t High Land on L. S. wind hard a head
Came too & Dined.

N. 22° W. $4\frac{1}{2}$ Miles to the head of good hope Island. 2 Indians
Came to the mouth of a Creek on the S. S.

11 Shields

3rd of October Wednesday 1804²—

The N. W. wind blew verry hard all night with Some rain a cold morning, we Set out at 7 oClock and proceeded on at 12 oclock landed on a Bare L. S. examined the Perogus & focatle (*forecastle*) of the (*boat*) to See if the mice had done any damage, Several bags cut by them corn scattered &c Some of our clothes also spoiled by them, and papers &c, &c. at 1 oClock an Indian came to the bank S. S. with a turkey on his back, four others Soon joined him, we attempted several chanelns and could not find water to assend, landed on

¹ This entry is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — Ed.

² At this point the journal is continued in Codex C, the last entry therein being dated April 7, 1805. — Ed.

a Sand bar & concluded to Stay all night, & Send out and hunt a chanell, some rain this afternoon. Saw Brant and white gulls flying Southerly in large flocks.

Course Distance & refferences. 3rd

N. 50° E. 2 ½ miles to a point of wood on the Larboard Side.
 N. 54° E. 2 miles to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side.
 North 2 miles to a point of high Land on the Larboard Side.
 N. 22° W. 1 ½ miles on the L. Side under a Bluff.
 8 miles

4th of October Thursday 1804—

the wind blew all night from the NW. some rain, we were obliged to Drop down 3 miles to get the Chanel Suf^t deep to pass up, Several Indians on the Shore viewing of us called to us to land one of them gave 3 yels & Sciped [*skipped*] a ball before us, we payed no attention to him, proceeded on and came too on the L. S. to brackf^t one of those Indians swam across to us beged for Powder, we gave him a piece of Tobacco & Set him over on a Sand bar, and set out, the wind hard ahead (1) passed a Island in the middle of the river about 3 miles in length, we call Good hope Island, (2) at 4 miles passed a (2) Creek on the L. S. about 12 yards wide Capt. Lewis and 3 men walked on Shore & crossed over to an (3) Island situated on the S. S. of the current & near the center of the river this Isl^t is about 1 ½ miles long & nearly ½ as wide, in the Center of this Island was an old village of the rickeries called *La hoo catt* it was circular and walled containing 17 lodges and it appears to have been deserted about five years, the Island contains but little timber. we camped on the Sand bar making from this Island, the day verry cool.

Course Distance & refferences, 4th Oct^r

N. 18° W. 8 ½ miles to a p^t on the S. S. passed an Island Goodhope
 in the middle of the river (1)
 N. 12° E. 1 ½ miles on the S. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (2)
 N. 45° E. 2 miles on the S. p^t passed an Island on which there
 12 was a Village (3) of Rickeries in the year 1797.
 La hoo-catt

5th of October, Friday 1804—

Frost this morning, we Set out early and proceeded on (1) passed a Small Creek on the L. S. at 7 oClock heard some yels proceeded on Saw 3 Indians of the Teton band, they called to us to come on Shore, beged Some Tobacco, we answ^d them as usual and proceeded on, passed (2) a Creek on the S. S. at 3 m^{ts} above the mouth we saw one white Brant in a gang of about 30, the others all as dark as usual, a Discription of this kind of Gees or Brant shall be given here after Saw a gang of Goats Swiming across the river out of which we killed four they were not fatt. in the evening passed a Small (3) Island Situated close to the L. Side, at the head of this Is^d a large Creek coms in on the L. S. saw white Brants, we call this Creek white Brant Creek. I walked on the Is^d found it Covered with wild Rye, I Shot a Buck, Saw a large gang of Goat on the hills opposit, one Buck killed, also a Prarie wolf this evening. The high Land not so high as below, river about the Same width, the Sand bars as noumerous, the earth Black and many of the Bluffs have the Appearance of being on fire. We came too and camped on a mud bar making from the S. S. the evening is calm and pleasant, refreshed the men with a glass of whiskey.

Course Distance & reffurences. — 5th October

N. 63° E.	1 ½	under Some high land on the S. S.
East.	3	miles to a point of Timber on the L. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (1) high land on the S. S.
N. 80° E.	1 ½	m ^{ts} to a Tree in the bend to the S. S.
N. 36° W.	2	m ^{ts} to a p ^t of high land on the L. S. passd a creek on the S. S. (2)
N. 50° W.	3	miles to a Point to the S. S.
N. 17° W.	3	m ^{ts} to a tree on the S. S. pass ^d a Small Island close on the L. S. above the S ^d Island a Creek comes in on the L. S.
N. 16° E.	6	m ^{ts} to a p ^t on the L. Side opposit a Willow Island
	20	Situated near the S. Shore

6th October Saturday 1804. —

a cool morning wind from the North Set out early passed a willow Island (1) Situated near the S. Shore at the upper point of Som timber on the S. S. many large round Stones near the middle of the river, those Stones appear to have been washed from the hills (2) passed a Village of about 80 neet Lodges covered with earth and picketed around, those loges are Spicious [spacious — E.D.] of an Octagon form as close together as they can possibly be placed and appear to have been inhabited last Spring, from the Canoes of Skins Mats buckits &c. found in the lodges, we are of oppinion they were the reerereis We found Squashes of 3 Different Kinds growing in the Village, one of our men Killed an Elk close by this Village, I saw 2 wolves in persute of another which appeared to be wounded and nearly tired, we proceeded on found the river Shole we made Several attempts to find the main Channel between the Sand bars, and was obliged at length to Drag the boat over to Save a league which we must return to get into the deepest Channel, we have been obg^d to hunt a Chan^t for Some time past the river being devided in many places in a great number of Chanels, Saw Gees, Swan, Brants, & Ducks of Different Kinds on the Sand bars to day, Cap^t Lewis walked on Shore Saw great numbers of Prarie hens, I observe but few Gulls or Pleover in this part of the river, The *Corvos* or Magpye is verry Common in this quarter. We camped on a large Sand bar off the mouth of Beaver or Otter Creek, on the S.S. this creek is about 22 yards wide at the mouth and contains a greater perpotion of Water than common for creeks of its Sise¹

Course Distance and Reffurences — 6th Oct^r

N. 4° E	8	miles to a point of woodland on the L. S. passed a willow Is ^d S. S.
N. 8° W.	1	M ^l on the L. Side
N. 32° W.	3	M ^{ls} to a point on the S. S. passed an old Village of the Rickorrees at the Coms ^t of this Course (2)
N. 40° W.	2½	Miles the Mouth of Beaver (otter Creek) on the S. S.
	<u>14½</u>	a large Sand bar opposit

¹ Now Swan Creek, in Walworth Co. — COVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 155).

7th of October Sunday 1804—

a Cloudy morning, Some little rain frost last night, we Set out early proceeded on 2 miles to the mouth of a (1) River on the L.S. and brackfast this river when full is 90 yards wide the water is at this time Confined within 20 yards, the Current appears jentle, this river throws out but little Sand. at the mouth of this river we Saw the Tracks of white bear which was verry large, I walked up this river a mile. below the (2) mouth of this river is the remains of a Rickorree Village or Wintering Camp fortified in a circular form of about 60 Lodges, built in the Same form of those passed yesterday This Camp appears to have been inhabited last winter, many of their willow and Straw mats, Baskets & Buffalow Skin Canoes remain intire within the Camp, the Ricaries call this river *Sur-war-kar-na* or Park.¹ [R?]]

Course Distance & Reffurances — 7th October

N. 42° W.	2	Miles to the Mouth of a River Caled <i>Sur war car na</i> in a bend to the L. S. (1) a village at Mo: (2)
N. 30° E.	3½	M ^{ls} to a Clump of bushes in a bend to the S. S. passing for ¾ mile on the L. S.
N. 30° W.	2	miles to a pt of high land on the L. Side, passed a willow Island (3)
N. 35° W.	7	on the L. Side passed a Sand bar on the S. S. (4)
N. 10° W.	1	mile on the L. S. to a pt.
N. 80° W.	3	miles to the left Side of an Island (5) in the mid river
N. 45° W.	1	Mile to the head of the Willows at the head of the S. Grouse Isl ^d
West	$\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{22}$	miles to a point on the main S. S. a large Sand bar from the upper point of the Island high land on both Sides opposit this Island.

from this river (*which heads in the 1st black mountains*) we proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S.W. at 10 oClock we Saw 2 Indians on the S.S. they asked for something to eat, & informed us they were part of the *Beiffs De Medesens* (*Beuffles de Medecines*) Lodge on their way to the

¹ Now Owl, or Moreau, River. — Ed.

Rickerrees passed (3) a Willow Island in a bend to the S.S. (4) at 5 Miles pass^d a willow Island on the S.S. Wind hard from the South in the evening I walked on an (5) Island nearly the middle of the river Called Grouse Island, (*the walls of a village on this island*) one of the men killed a Shee Brarow,¹ another man Killed a Black tail Deer, the largest Doe I ever Saw, (Black under her breast) this Island is nearly 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ m^s Squar no timber high and Covered with grass wild rye and contains Great Numbers of Grouse, we proceeded on a Short distance above the Island and Camped on the S.S. a fine evening.

8th of October Monday 1804. —

a cool morning Set out early the wind from the N.W. proceeded on, passed the mouth of a Small Creek on the L.S. about 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ miles above Grouse Island, (3) passed a Willow Island which divides the Current equilly. (2) passed the mouth of a River called by the Ricares *W'e tar hoo*² on the L.S. this river is 120 yards wide, the water of which at this time is Confined within 20 yards, discharging but a Small quantity, throwing out mud with Small propotion of Sand, great quantities of the red Berries, ressembling Currents, are on the river in every bend. 77. 33'. 00" Lattitude from the obsevation of to day at the mouth of this river (*heads in the Black mount'n*) is 45°. 39'. 5" North. proceeded on passed a (3) Small river of 25 yards wide Called (4) Rear par or Beaver Dam R: this river [*Ma ro pa*]³ is entirely chocked up with mud, with a Streem of 1 Inch Diamiter passing through, discharging no Sand, at 1 (5) mile passed the lower pint of an Island close on the L.S. 2 of our men discovered the ricckerree village, about the Center of the Island on the L. Side on the main Shore. this Island is about 3 miles long, Separated from the L.S. by a Channel of about 60 yards wide very Deep, The Isl^t is covered with fields, where those People raise their Corn Tobacco Beens &c. &c. Great num-

¹ Corrupt form of *blaireau* (the badger). — ED.

² Now Grand River ; an Indian agency of the same name at its mouth. — ED.

³ Known as Rampart Creek, and Oak Creek. — ED.

bers of those people came on the Island to See us pass, we passed above the head of the Island & Cap^t Lewis with 2 interpreters & 2 men went to the Village I formed a Camp of the french & the guard on Shore, with one Sentinal on board of the boat at anchor, a pleasant evening all things arranged both for Peace or War, This Village (6) is Situated about the center of a large Island near the L. Side & near the foot of Some high bald uneven hills, Several french men Came up with Cap^t Lewis in a Perogue, one of which is a M^r Gravelin¹ a man well versed in the language of this nation and gave us some information relitive to the Countrey natⁱon &c.

Courses Distance and refferences. — 8th Oct^r

N. 70° W	2	Miles to a tree in the bend to the L. Side, passed a small Creek L. S. (1)
N. 10° W.	1	miles to the p ^t on the S. S.
N. 15° E.	2½	to the mo: of a River [<i>We ter boo 120 yds wide</i>] in the bend to the L. S. (2) passing over a willow Island (3)
N. 40° E.	1	mile on the L. Side
N. 30° E	1	mile on the L. S. to the Mouth of a Small river [<i>Ma-ro-pa</i>] (4)
N. 15° E	1	mile to the lower p ^t of an Is ^d (5)
N.orth	3½ 12	Miles to a p ^t . on the S. S. pass ^d the head of the Is ^d and the 1 st rickorries Village (6) opps ^d a Creek we Call after the 1 st Chief Ka kaw iss assa Creek. L. S.

[Orderly Book; Clark:]

Orders October the 8th 1804.

Robert Frazer being regularly inlisted and having become one of the *Corps* of *Volenteers* for *North-Western Discovery*, he is therefore to be viewed & respected accordingly; and will be annexed to Sergeant Gass's mess.

W^m CLARK Cp^t &c.
MERIWETHER LEWIS
Cap^t 1st U.S. Reg^t Inf^{ty}

¹ Joseph Gravelines, a trader residing among the Arikara tribe, in company with Antoine Tabeau (Tabo), who is mentioned below. — ED.

Orders

October the 18th 1804

Robert Frazer being
regularly included and hav-
ing become one of the Corps
of Volunteers for North
Western Discovery, he is
therefore to be viewed &
respected accordingly,
and will be annexed to
Sergeant Gage's Mess.

Wm Clark

Meriwether Lewis

Rever Bearap

Capt. 1st U.S. Regt. Dragoons

[Clark:]

River Maropa 9th of October 1804 Tuesday—

a windey rainy night, and cold, So much So we Could not speek with the Indians to day the three great Chiefs and many others Came to see us to day, we gave them some tobacco and informed them we would Speek on tomorrow, the day continued Cold & windey some rain Sorry Canoos of Skins passed down from the 2 Villages a Short distance above, and many Came to view us all day, much astonished at my black Servent, who did not lose the opportunity of [displaying — E.V.] his powers Strength &c. &c. this nation never Saw a black man before.¹

Several hunters Came in with loades of meat, I observed Several Canoos made of a Single Buffalow Skin with 3 three squars Cross the river to day in waves as high as I ever Saw them on this river, quite uncomposed I have a Slite Plursie this evening verry cold &c. &c.²

1st Chiefs name *Ka kawissassa* (lighting Crow)

2^d do do *Pocasse* (or Hay)

3rd do do *piaheto* (or Eagles feather)

10th of October Wednesday 1804.

a fine morning wind from the S.E. at about 11 oClock the wind Shifted, to the N. W. we prepare all things ready to Speak to the Indians, M^r Tabo & M^r Gravin came to brack-

¹ By way of amusement he told them that he had once been a wild animal, and caught and tamed by his master; and to convince them showed them feats of strength which added to his looks made him more terrible than we wished him to be. — BIDDLE (i, p. 101).

In a rare pamphlet entitled *Adventures of Zenas Leonard* (Clearfield, Pa., 1839) — for information regarding which see Chittenden's *Amer. Fur Trade*, i, p. 397 — is an account of a negro residing (1832-34) in the Crow village at the junction of Bighorn and Stinking rivers, who apparently was Clark's servant York. He told Leonard that he first went to that country with Lewis and Clark, with whom he returned to Missouri; that he afterward accompanied a trader up the Missouri, and had remained with the Indians ever since (about ten or twelve years). He had, when Leonard saw him, four Indian wives, and possessed much reputation and influence among the Crows, from whom he secured the return of some horses which they had stolen from Leonard's party. — WALTER B. DOUGLAS (St. Louis).

² Wind blew hard this morning drove the boat from her anker, to shore. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C).

fast with us the Cheefs &c. came from the lower Town, but none from the 2 upper Towns, which is the largest, we Continue to delay & waite for them at 12 oClock Despatchd Gravelin to envite them to come down, we have every reason to believe that a gellousy exists between the Villages for fear of our making the 1st Cheif from the lower Village, at one oClock the Cheifs all assembled & after Some little Cerremony the council Commenced, we inform^d them what we had told the others before i. e. Ottoes & Seaux. made 3 Cheif 1 for each Village; gave them presents. after the Council was over we Shot the air guns which astonished them much, the[y] then Departed and we rested Secure all night, Those Indians wer much astonished at my Servent, they never Saw a black man before, all flocked around him & examin^d him from top to toe, he Carried on the joke and made himself more turribal than we wished him to doe. Those Indians are not fond of Spirt^d Licquer. of any kind ¹

11th October Thursday 1804 —

a fine morning the wind from the S.E. at 11 oClock we met the Grand Cheif in Council and he made a Short Speech thanking us for what we had given him & his nation promissing to attend to the Council we had given him & informed us the road was open & no one dare Shut it, & we might Departe at pleasure, at 1 oClock we Set out for the upper Villages 3 miles destant, the Grand Cheif & nephew on board, proceeded on at 1 mile took in the 2^d Cheif & Came too off the first [*second*] Village Seperated from the 3rd by a Creek after arrangeing all matters we walked up with the 2^d Cheif to his Village, and Set talking on Various Subjects untill late we also visited the upper or 3rd Village each of which gave us Something to eate in their way, and a few bushels of Corn Beens &c. &c. after being treated by every civility by those people who are both pore & Durtey we returned to our boat

¹ Much pleased, the french Cheif lost his presents by his Skin Canoe oversetting, shot the air gun, the men traded some few articles for Robes had the Corn mill set up & shewed the Ind^s its operation after Speaking to them &c. — CLARK (*ut supra*).

at about 10 o'Clock. P M. informing them before we Departed that we would Speek to them tomorrow at there Seperate Villages, Those people gave us to eate bread made of Corn & Beens, also Corn & Beens boil'd a large Been (*of*) which they rob the mice of the Prarie (*who collect & discover it*) which is rich & verry nurrishing also [*s*]quashes &c. all Tranquillity.

Course Distance & Reffurence 12th [11th ?] Oct^r

N. 45. E 2 Miles to the mouth of a Creek between the 2 upper Villages of the Rickeres L. S. (1)
 S. 75° E 1½ Miles the point on the L. S. passed the Village (2)
 N. 45° E. 2 M^{ls} to a point of wood on the L. S.
 N. 20° W. 2½ miles to a p^t on the S. S.
 N. 8 W. 1½ Miles to a point on L. S. passed a Sand bar.
 9½

12th October Friday 1804 —

I rose early after brackfast we joined the Indians who were waiting on the bank for us to come out and go and council, we accordingly joined them and went to the house of the 2nd Cheif *Lassel* where there was many Cheif and Warriars & [they made us a present of— BIDDLE] about 7 bushels of Corn, a pr. of Leagins, a twist of their Tobacco, & Seeds of 2 Kind of Tobacco¹ we Set Some time before the Council Com-menced this man Spoke at Some length declaring his dis-potion to believe and prosue our Councils, his intention of going to Visit his great father acknowledged the Satisfaction in receiveing the presents &c. rais'g a Doubt as to the Safty in passing the Nations below particularly the Souex. requested us to take a Chief of their nation and make a good peace with Mandins & nations above. after answering those parts of the 2^d Cheifs Speech which required it, which appeared to give general Satisfaction we went to the Village of the 3rd Chief and as usial Some Serimony took place before he Could Speek to us on the Great Subject. This Chief Spoke very much in the [same] Stile on nearly the Same Subjects of the other Chief

¹ Their tobacco is different from any I had before seen ; it answers for smoking, but not for chewing. — GASS (p. 73).

who Set by his Side, more Sincere & pleasantly, he presented us with about 10 bushels of Corn¹ Some beens & [s]quashes all of which we accepted with much pleasure, after we had answered his Speech & give them Some account of the Magnitude & power of our Country which pleased and astonished them very much we returned to our boat, the Chiefs accompanied us on board, we gave them Some Sugar a little Salt and a Sun Glass, & Set 2 on Shore & the third proceeded on with us to the Mandens by name [blank space in MS.] at 2 oClock we Set out the inhabitants of the two Villages Viewing us from the banks, we proceeded on about 9½ miles and Camped on the S.S. at Some woods passed, the evening Clear & pleasant Cool.

The Nation of the Rickerries (*Rickaras*) is about 600 men (M^r Taboe says, I think 500 men) (*M^r Tabat is right*) able to bear arms a Great perportion of them have fuseses they appear to be peacefull, their men tall and perpotiend,² womin Small and industerous, raise great quantities of Corn Beens Simnins³ &c. also Tobacco for the men to Smoke they collect all the wood and do the drugery as Common amongst Savages.

This nation is (*two villages are*) made up of 10 (*nine*) Different Tribes of the Pania (*Panies*), who had formerly been Seperate, but by Commotion and war with their neighbours have Come reduced and compelled to come together for protection, The curruption of the language of those different Tribes has So reduced the language that the Different Villages do not understan all the words of the others. Those people are Durtey, Kind, pore, & extravigent. pursessing national pride, not beggarley recive what is given with great pleasure, Live in warm houses, large and built in an oxigon [octagon] form forming a cone at top which is left open for the smoke

¹ Recive Some Corn from the 2^d & 3^d Chf. about 20 bushels. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C).

² Gass says of the Arikara (pp. 73, 74) that "they are the best-looking, most cleanly, most friendly and industrious Indians I have ever seen on the voyage." — ED.

³ A form of "simlin" or "simnel," a name used in the Southern States for summer squashes. — ED.

to pass, those houses are Generally 30 or 40 foot Diamiter, Cov^d with earth on poles willows & grass to prevent the earths passing thro'.¹ Those people express an inclination to be at peace with all nations. The Seaux who trade the goods which they get of the British Traders for their Corn,² and [have] great influence over the Rickeres, poison their minds and keep them in perpetual dread.

I saw Some of the Chien (*Chyenne*) or Dog Indians, also a man of a nation under the *Court Nue*, This nation is at war with the Crow Indians & have 3 children prisoners.

a curious custom with the Souix as well as the rickeres is to give handsom squars to those whome they wish to Show some acknowledgements to. The Seaux we got clare of without taking their squars, they followed us with Squars two days. The Rickores we put off dureing the time we were at the Towns but 2 [*handsom young*] Squars were Sent by a man to follow us, they came up this evening, and pursisted in their civilities.³

Dress of the men of this nation is Simply a p^r mockerson, Leagin, flap in front & a Buffalow roabe, with ther hair arms & ears Deckorated.

The womin, wore Mockersons leagins fringed and a Shirt of Goat Skins, Some with Sleeves this garment is longe & Genl^r white & fringed, tied at the waste[,] with a roabe, in Summer without hair.

¹ Cf. the more detailed descriptions of these huts given by Biddle (i, p. 106), Gass (p. 72), and Brackenridge (*Louisiana*, p. 248). — Ed.

² The English traders not only traffic with the Indians about the shining [Rocky] mountains, but they have extended it to the Mandans on the Missouri, and to several other tribes both above and below them. The Spaniards also from Santa Fe occasionally traffic with the Indians about the waters of the Kansas, as likewise with those on the river Platte. — STODDARD (*Louisiana*, pp. 453, 454).

³ Brackenridge says (*Louisiana*, p. 247): "It is part of their hospitality, to offer the guest their wife, sister, or maid servant, according to the estimation in which the guest is held, and to refuse, is considered as treating the host with contempt." This was a custom widely prevalent among Indian tribes, especially those of the Far West. Biddle says (i, p. 105) that Arikara regarded such intercourse with strangers as disgraceful, when occurring without the husband's or brother's consent. — Ed.

[Memorandum made by Clark on the inside front cover of Codex C:]

Names of the nations who come to the Ricares to trafick and bring Horses & robes

- 1 - *Kun.na-nar-II'esh* — (Gens des vach)¹ Blue beads.
- 2 *Noo-tar-wau* — Hill Climbers
- * 3 *Au-ner-hoo* — the people who pen Buffaloes to catch them
- * 4 *To-che-wab-coo* — Fox Indians
- * 5 *To-pah-cass* — white hair's
- 6 *Cat-tar-kab* — Paducar.
- * 7 *Ki-e-wah* — Tideing Indians
- + 8 *Too-war-sar* — Skin pricks
- 9 *Shār ha (chien)* — The village on the other side
- 10 *We hee skeu (chien)* — The villagers on this side

Those nations all live on the praries from S W by S to West of the Ricarees all speek different languages and are numerous, all follow the Buffalow and winter near the mountains.

13th of October Saturday 1804 —

one man J. Newmon confined for mutinous expression Set out early proceeded on, pass^d a camp of Seaux on the S.S. those people only viewed us & did not Speak one word. The visitors of last evening all except one returned which is the Brother of the Chief we have on board passed (1) a Creek 13 yds on the S.S. at 18 m! above the Town heading in some Ponds a Short Dist^t to the N.E. we call Stone Idol C. (well to observe here that the Yankton or R. Jacque heads at about 2 Days March of this place Easterly, the R. de Seaux one Day further, the Chien (*Chayenne the Chay' formerly there*) a branch of R. Rouche (*Rouge*) Still beyend, and the River *S. Peters* 4 Days march from this place on the Same Derection (Infornt³ of the Rickores). Passed a large willow (2) & Sand Islands above the mouth of the last Creek. at 21 Miles

¹ A French nickname, meaning "cow-people" — that is, Buffalo tribe. The Indian name here given — written by Biddle (i, p. 34) Kaninaviesch — is only an Chippewa appellation of that tribe, now known as the Arapaho, one of the westernmost Algonquian tribes (see Mooney's sketch of this people, in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892-93, pp. 953-957). Lewis, however, in his "Statistical View" (p. 18) applies the name Ar-rah'-pā-hoo' to a branch of the Pawnee. — ED.

above the Village passed a (3) Creek about 15 yards wide on the L.S. we call after 2^d Chief Pocasse (or Hay). nearly opposit this Creek a few miles from the river on the S.S. 2 Stones resembling humane persons & one resembling a Dog is Situated in the open Prarie, to those Stones the Rickores pay Great reverance make offerings (*votive Dress &c.*) whenever they pass (Informⁿ of the Chief & Intepeter) those People have a curious Tredition of those Stones, one was a man in Love, one a Girl whose parents would not let [them] marry (*The man as is customary went off to mourn, the female followed.*), the Dog went to morn with them all turned to Stone gradually, commencing at the feet. Those people fed on grapes untill they turned, & the woman has a bunch of grapes yet in her hand, on the river near the place those are Said to be Situated, we obs^d a greater quantity of fine grapes than I ever Saw at one place.

The river above the Island on which the Lower Reckores Village is Situated is narrow and cont^d a great[er] propotion of Timber than below, the bottoms on both Sides is covered with timber the up lands naked the current jentle and Sand bars confined to the points Generally.

We proceeded on under a fine Breeze from the S.E. and camped late at the upper part of Some wood on the Starboard Side. Cold & Some rain this evening. we Sent out hunters killed one Deer.

we Tried the Prisoner Newmon last night by 9 of his Peers they did "Centence him 75 Lashes & Disbanded [from] the party."

Course distance & reffurence — 13th Oct^r

N. 60° W.	3	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S.
N. 40. W.	2	Miles to a p ^t of timber on L. S.
N. 10. W.	2	Miles to the p ^t on the L. S.
N. 53 W.	1½	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the S. S.
North	2	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L. S. opsit the mouth of a Creek on the S. S. (1)
N. 70° W.	4½	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S. passing a Island (2) and ops ^d a Creek L. S. (3)
N. 18° E	3	M ^{ls} to the upper point of Some wood on the S. S. and camped.
	18	

[Orderly Book; Clark:]

Orders 13th of October 1804

A Court Martial to Consist of nine members will set to day at 12 oClock for the trial of John Newmon now under Confinement. Cap^t Clark will attend to the forms & rules of a president without giving his opinion.

Detail for the Court Martial

Serg ^t John Ordaway	W ^m Werner
Sergeant Pat: Gass	W ^m Bratten
Jo: Shields	Geo: Shannon
H: Hall	Silas Goodrich
Jo. Collins	

MERIWETHER LEWIS Cap^t

1st U'S. Reg^t Infy

W^m CLARK Cap^t

or E. N W D [Engineer North Western
Discovery. — E.D.]

[Lewis:]

In conformity to the above order the Court martial convened this day for the trial of John Newman, charged with "having uttered repeated expressions of a highly criminal and "mutinous nature; the same having a tendency not only to "distroy every principle of military discipline, but also to "alienate the affections of the individuals composing this "detachment to their officers, and disaffect them to the service for which they have been so sacredly and solemnly "engaged." The Prisoner plead *not guilty* to the charge exhibited against him. The court after having duly considered the evidence aduced, as well as the defence of the said prisoner, are unanimously of opinion that the prisoner John Newman is guilty of every part of the charge exhibited against him, and do sentence him agreeably to the rules and articles of war, to receive seventy five lashes on his bare back, and to be henceforth discarded from the permanent party engaged for North Western discovery; two thirds of the Court concurring

in the sum and nature of the punishment awarded. the commanding officers approve and confirm the sentence of the court, and direct the punishment take place tomorrow between the hours of one and two P.M. The commanding officers further direct that John Newman in future be attached to the mess and crew of the red Perogue as a labouring hand on board the same, and that he be deprived of his arms and accoutrements, and not be permitted the honor of mounting guard untill further orders; the commanding officers further direct that in lue of the guard duty from which Newman has been exempted by virtue of this order, that he shall be exposed to such drudgeries as they may think proper to direct from time to time with a view to the general relief of the detachment.

[Clark:]

14th of October Sunday 1804.—

Some rain last night all wet & cold, we Set [out] early the rain contin^d all Day, at [blank in MS.] miles we passed a (1) Creek on the L.S. 15 yards wide this Creek we call after the 3rd Chief *Piaheto* (or Eagles feather) at 1 oClock we halted on a Sand bar & after Dinner executed the Sentence of the Court Martial so far a[s] giving the Corporal punishment, & proceeded on a few Miles, the wind a head from N.E. Camped in a Cove of the bank on the S.S.¹ immediately opposit our Camp on the L.S. I observe an antient fortification the Walls of which appear to be 8 or 10 feet high, (*most of it washed in*) the evening wet and disagreeable, the river Something wider more timber on the banks.

The punishment of this day allarm^d the Indian Chief verry much, he cried aloud (or effected to cry) I explained the Cause of the punishment and the necessity (*of it*) which he (*also*) thought examples were also necessary, & he himself had made them by Death, his nation never whiped even their Children, from their burth.

¹ In North Dakota, close to 46, at a creek now called Thunder-hawk. *Piaheto* is now Blackfoot Creek. — COVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 168).

Courses & Distance & reffurances. — 14th

S. 70° W.	1	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L.S.	the Same course continud 2
		M ^l to a bend L.S.	
N. 63° E.	2	M ^{ls} to the p ^t on the S.S.	pass ^d a Creek on the
		L.S. (1)	
N. 30° W.	1 1/2	M ^l to a large Tree on the L.S.	
N. 40° E.	1 1/2	M ^{ls} to some trees on the S. S.	
N. 60° W.	3	M ^{ls} to a p ^t on the L.S.	Passing
N. 70° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S.S.	passed an antient forti-
	<u>12</u>	fication on the L.S.	

15th of October Monday 1804—

rained all last night, we Set out early and proceeded on at 3 miles passed an Ind^s Camp (*of hunters Ricaras*) on the S.S. we halted above and about 30 of the Indians came over in their canoos of Skins, we eate with them, they give us meat, in return we gave fish hooks & some beeds, about a mile higher we came too on the L.S. at the camp of the Recores (*ricaras*) of about 8 Lodges, we also eate and they gave Some meat, we proceeded on Saw numbers of Indians on both Sides passing a Creek, Saw many curious hills, high and much the resemblance of a house with a hiped (*like ours*) roof, at 12 oClock it cleared away and the evening was pleasant, wind from the N.E. at Sunset we arrived at a Camp of Recares of 10 Lodges on the S.S. we came too and camped near them Cap^t Lewis and my self went with the Chief who accomanis us, to the Huts of Several of the men all of whome Smoked & gave us something to eate also Some meat to take away, those people were kind and appeared to be much pls^d at the attentioned paid them.

Those people are much pleased with my black Servent. Their womin verry fond of carressing our men &c.

Course Distance & References — 15 th Oct		
West	2½	Miles to a Creek on the L.S. passing over a Sand bar making from the S. p'
North	4	Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. passing over a sand point on the S.S.
N. 34° W.	3½	Miles to a point of wood on the S. S. passing old Village of the <i>Shār há</i> or Chien Indians on the L.S. below a Creek on the same Side. passed a Camp of Ricars on S.S.

 10

16th of October Tuesday 1804 —

Some rain this morning, 2 young squars verry anxious to accompany us, we Set out with our Chief on board by name *Ar ke tar na shar* or Chief of the Town, a little above our camp on the L.S. passed a circular work, where the, *Shār há* or Chien, or Dog Indians formerly lived a short distance above passed a Creek which we call Chien Creek (*Chayenne* or *Shar ha* (*Mr Hayley says Not Chien*), above is a willow Island Situated near (1) the L. Side a large Sand bar above & on both Sides (2) passed a Creek above the Island on the L.S. call *Sò-harch* (or Girls) Creek, at 2 miles higher up (3) passed a Creek on L.S. call *Charpart*¹ (or womins) Creek, passed (5) an Island Situated in a bend to the S.S. this Is^d is about 1½ Miles long, covered with timber Such as Cotton wood, ops^d the lower point a creek coms in on [sentence incomplete — ED.] the S.S. called by the Indians *Kee tooch Sar kar nar* [Keetoosahawna — BIDDLE] (or place of Beaver) above the Island a small river coms in about 35 yards wide called *War ra con ne*² or (Elk Shed their horns). The Island is called Carp Island by Ivens [Evans] Wind hard from the N.W. Saw great numbers of Goats on the Shore S.S. proceeded on Cap^t Lewis & the Indian Chief walked on Shore, soon after I discovered great numbers of Goats in the river, and Indians on the Shore on each Side, as I approached or

¹ These names are spelled by Biddle, Sohaweh and Chapawt; he says that they are Arikara words. — ED.

² The present name is Big Beaver Creek; at its mouth is the town of Emmonsburg, N. D. — ED.

got nearer I discovered boys in the water Killing the goats with Sticks and halling them to Shore, Those on the banks Shot them with arrows and as they approach^d the Shore were turn them back of this Gangue of Goats I counted 58 of which they had killed on the Shore, one of our hunters out with Cap Lewis killed three Goats, we passed the Camp on the S.S. and proceeded $\frac{1}{2}$ mile and camped on the L.S. many Indians came to the boat to See, Some came across late at night, as they approach they hollowed and Sung, after Staying a short time 2 went for Some meat, and returned in a Short time with fresh & Dried Buffalow, also goat, those Indians Stayed all night, they Sung and was verry merry the greater part of the night.

Course Distance & reffurances — 16th Oct

North	4	Miles to a p ^t on the S.S. Passed a Willow Island L. S. (1) a Creek (2) above the Isl ^d & one at 2 miles further (3)
N. 10° E.	6.	Miles to the upper point of Some Timber on the L. S. ops ^d the mouth of a Creek on the S. S. (4) passed a Isl ^d on the S.S. (5) ops ^d the Lower p ^t of which comes in a Creek (5)
North	$\frac{1}{2}$	Mile on the L. Side
N. 30° W.	1	M ^l on the L. point High L ^d
N. 38° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S.S.
		14 $\frac{1}{2}$

Course Distance & reffurence. — 17th Oct.

N. 10° E.	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	Miles to a p ^t on the L.S.
North	$\frac{1}{2}$	m ^l on the L.S.
N. 10° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	M ^l on the L.S.
N. 33° W.	$\frac{3\frac{1}{2}}$	M ^l s to the Commencement of Some woods on the S.S.
		6

~~note~~ note from the *Ricares* to the River Jacque near N.E. is about 40 m^ls to the Chien a fork of R Rogue¹ 20 (*further*) passing the Souix River near the Chien this from information of M^l Graveline who passed through this Countrey.

¹ Meaning Rouge — that is, Red River (of the North). — ED.

17th of October Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early a fine morning the wind from the N.W. after brackfast I walked on Shore with the Indian Chief & Interpreters, Saw Buffalow, Elk and Great numbers of Goats in large gangues (I am told by M^r G. that those animals winter in the Black Mountains *to feed on timber &c.*) and this is about the Season they cross from the East of the Missouries to go to that Mountain, they return in the Spring and pass the Missouries in great numbers (*to the plains*). This Chief tells me of a number of their Treditions about Turtles, Snakes, &c. and the power of a perticeler rock or Cove on the next river which informs of every thing none of those I think worth while mentioning. The wind So hard a head the [boat] could not move after 10 oClock. Cap^t Louis took the altitude of the Sun Lat^d 46°. 23'. 57" I killed 3 Deer, and the hunters with me killed 3 also, the Indian Shot one but could not get it, I scaffeled¹ up the Deer & returned & met the boat after night on the L.S. about 6 miles above the place we camped last night. one of the men saw a number of Snakes, Cap^t Lewis Saw a large Beaver house S.S. I caught a whippwill Small & not common.² the leaves are falling fast. the river wide and full of Sand bars. Great numbers of verry large Stone on the Sides of the hills & some rock of a brownish Colour in the L^d Bend below this.

Great numbers of Goats are flocking down to the S. Side of the river, on their way to the Black mountains where they winter Those animals return in the Spring in the Same way & scatter in different directions.

18th of October Thursday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on at 6 m^h passed the mouth of (1) la [Le] Boulet (or Cannon Ball River) about 140 yards wide on the L.S. this river heads in the *Court Noi* or Black

¹ That is, scaffolded, to be above the reach of wolves. — ED.

² Nuttall's whippoorwill (*Phalacroptilus Nuttalli*). — ED.

Mountains (a fine Day) above the mouth of the river Great numbers of Stone perfectly round with fine Grit are in the Bluff and on the Shore, the river takes its name from those Stones which resemble Cannon Balls. The water of this river is confined within 40 yards. We met 2 frenchmen in a perogue Decending from hunting, & complained of the Mandans robing them of 4 Traps their furs & Several other articles. Those men were in the imploy of our Ricaree interpreter M! Gravelin the[y] turned & followed us.

Saw Great numbers of Goats on the S.S. coming to the river our hunters Killed 4 of them Some run back and others crossed & proceeded on their journey to the *Court Nou* at (3) passed a Small River called *Che wah* or fish river¹ on the S.S. this river is about 28 yards wide and heads to the N.E. passed a small creek on the L.S. 1 mile above the last, and camped on a Sand bar on the L.S. opposit to us we Saw a Gangue of Buffalow bulls which we did not think worth while to kill. our hunters killed 4 Coats [Goats] 6 Deer 4 Elk & a pelican & informs that they Saw in one gang: 248 Elk, (I walked on Shore in the evening with a view to see Some of those remarkable places mentioned by evins [Evans — ED.], none of which I could find). The Countrey in this Quarter is Generally leavel & fine Some high Short hills, and some ragid ranges of Hills at a Distance

Course Distance & References — 18th Oct

N. 50° W.	3	Miles to the mouth of a River (1) <i>cannon ball</i> L. S.
N. 20° W.	2	Miles to a point of wood land on the S. S. passing a Bluff in which theres round stone (2)
North	2½	miles to a point of wood land on the L. S.
N. 15° W.	½	Mile on the L. S. ops ^d a Creek on the S. S. (3)
N. 10° E.	2½	miles to a point on the S. S. passing a small Creek on L. S.
N. 20° E.	3	miles to a point of woods on the L. S. passing over a Sand bar
	13	

¹ Now Long Lake Creek : this day's encampment was near Fort Rice. — ED.

~~1803~~ The recaree Indians inform us that they find no black tail Deer as high up as this place, those we find are of the fallow Deer kind

~~1803~~ The *recarees* are not fond of Spiritous liquers, nor do they apper to be fond of Receiveng any or thankfull for it. [*they say we are no friends or we would not give them what makes them fools*].

19th October Friday 1804. —

a fine morning wind from the S.E. we Set out early under a gentle Breeze and proceeded on verry well, more timber than common on the banks on this part of the river. passed a large Pond on the S.S. I walked out on the Hills & observed Great numbers of Buffalow feeding on both Sides of the river I counted 52 Gangues of Buffalow & 3 of Elk at one View, all the runs which come from the high hills which is Generally about one or 2 miles from the water is brackish and near the Hills (the Salts are) and the Sides of the Hills & edges of the Streems, [*the mineral salts appear*] I saw Some remarkable round hills forming a cone at top one about 90 foot one 60 & several others Smaller, the Indian Chief say that the Callemet bird¹ live in the holes of those hills, the holes form by the water washing [away] this Some parts in its passage Down from the top — near one of those noles [Knolls], on a point of a hill 90 feet above the lower plane I observed the remains of an old village, (*high, strong, watchtower &c.*) which had been fortified, the Indian Chief with us tels me, a party of Mandans lived there, [*Here first saw ruins of Mandan nation*] we proceeded on & camped on the S. S. opposit the upper of those conocal hills. our hunters killed 4 Elk 6 Deer & a pelican, I saw Swans in a Pond & killed a fat Deer in my walk, Saw about 10 wolves. This day is pleasent

¹ The golden eagle (*Aquila chrysaetos*) — thus named because its tail-feathers are used to decorate the calumet-pipes of the Indians, who attach great value to these ornaments. — ED.

Course Distance & reffurence — 19th Oct^r.

- N. 60° W. 2½ M^{ls} to a p^t on the S.S. Passed a Creek on the S.S.
 N. 40° W. 2 M^{ls} to Some wood in a bend on the L.S.
 N. 10° E. 1½ mile to the point on the L.S.
 N. 20° W. 2 miles to a tree in the bend S.S.
 N. 83° W. 3 miles to the point on the S.S.
 N. 44° W. 1 mile to a Willow point on the L.S. p^d a Lake S.S.
 N. 30° W. 2 miles to a tree in the bend to the S.S.
 N. 80° W. 3½ miles to a point on the S.S. (2) opposit a round nole
 17½ on the L.S. a Deep bend to the L.S. & pond.

Courses Distance & Reffers. — 20th October

- N. 30° W. 2 Miles to Some timber in a bend to the S.S. at a Creek (1)
 N. 10° W. 1 mile on the S.S.
 N. 54° W. 3 miles to a p^t on the L.S. Is^d passing over a Sand bar
 S. S.
 N. 2 miles to some high trees in a bend on the S.S. passing
 the low^t p^t Is^d (2)
 N. 70° W. 2 Miles to a p^t on the S.S. passing the upper p^t of the
 Island on the L.S.
 N. 50° W. 2 M^{ls} to the upper part of a Bluff in which there (3) is
 Stone Cole on the L.S. passing the 1st old Mandin
 12 Village on the L.S. (4)

20th of October Saturday 1804 —

Set out early this morning and proceeded on the wind from the S.E. after brackfast I walked out on the L. Side to See those remarkable places pointed out by Evins, I saw an old remains of a village (*covering 6 or 8 acres*) on the Side of a hill which the Chief with Too né tels me that nation lived in 2 [*a number*] villages 1 on each Side of the river and the Troublesom Seaux caused them to move about 40 miles higher up where they remained a few years & moved to the place they now live, (2) passed a small Creek on the S.S. (3) and one on the L. S. passed (4) a Island covered with willows laying in the middle of the river no current on the L.S. Camped on the L.S. above a Bluff containing coal (5) of an inferior quality, this bank is imediately above the old Village of the Mandans. The Country is fine, the high hills at a Distance with gradual

assents, *1 kill 3 Deer* The Timber confined to the bottoms as usual which is much larger than below. Great numbers of Buffalo Elk & Deer, Goats. our hunters killed 10 Deer & a Goat to day and wounded a white Bear,¹ I saw several fresh tracks of those animals which is 3 times as large as a mans track. The wind hard all Day from the N.E. & East, great numbers of buffalo Swimming the river I observe near all large gangues of Buffalo wolves and when the buffalo move those animals follow, and feed on those that are killed by accident or those that are too pore or fat to keep up with the gangue.

21st October Sunday 1804 —

a verry Cold night wind hard from the N.E. Some rain in the night which frozed as it fell at Day light it began to *Snow* and continued all the fore part of the Day passed just above our camp (1) a Small river on the L. S. called by the Indians Chiss-che-tar [Chisshetaw — BIDDLE] this river is about 38 yards wide containing a good Deel of water² Some distance up this River is Situated a Stone which the Indians have great faith in & say they See painted on the Stone, all the Calemetes & good fortune to hapin the nation & parties who visit it. a tree [*an oak*] which Stands [*alone*] near this place [*about 2 miles off*] in the open prarie which has withstood the fire they pay Great respect to make Holes and tie Strings thro [*the skins of their*] their necks and around this tree to make them brave [*Cap! Clarke saw this tree*] (all this is the information of *Too ne* [*is a whipperwill*] the Cheif of the Ricares who accompanied us to the Mandins, at 2 Miles (2) passed the 2nd Village of the Mandins which was in existance at the same time with the 1st this Village is at the foot of a hill on the S.S. in a butifull & extensive plain, (*nearly opposite is another*

¹ Pierre Cruzat shot a white bear left his gun, &c. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

² Now known as Heart River; just above are the towns of Bismarck and Mandan, N. D., joined by the N. P. Railway bridge. Just below the river are the ruins of Fort Abraham Lincoln, Custer's post in 1876. The encampment of Lewis and Clark on October 20, 1804, was a little above the site of the fort. — O. D. WHEELER.

village in a bottom the other side of Missouri) at this time covered with Buffalo. a cloudy afternoon, I killed a fine Buffalo, we camped on the L. S. (*below an old Mandan village having passed another up a Creek 3 miles below on S^d S. verry cold Ground covered with Snow. one orter [otter] killd.*

Course Distance & refer^s—21st Oct.

S. 80° E. 2 miles to the place the Mandans had a village formerly at the foot of a rising part of the plain. (1) on the S. S. passed a river
 N. 16° W. 1½ miles to a grove on the S. S.
 N. 40° W. 3½ Miles to a p^t on the S. S. river wide and sand bars a large willow Island
 7

22nd October Monday 1804—

last night at 1 oClock I was violently and Suddenly attacked with the Rhumetism in the neck which was So violent I could not move Cap^t [Lewis] applied a hot Stone raped in flannel, which gave me some temporey ease. We Set out early, the morning Cold at 7 oClock we came too at a camp of Teton Seaux on the L. S. those people 12 in number were nack^d¹ and had the appearance of war, we have every reason to believe that they are going or have been to Steel Horses from the Mandins, they tell two Stories, we gave them nothing after takeing brackfast proceeded on. my Neck is yet verry painfull at times Spasms. (*Passed old Ma[n]dan village near which we lay, another at 4 miles, one at 8 miles at mouth of large creek 4 miles further all on Larboard side.*) (*The mounds, 9 in number along river within 20 miles the fallen down earth of the houses, some teeth and bones of men & animals mixed in these vil-lages, human skulls are scattered in these vil-lages*)

Camped on the L. Side, passed an Island Situated on the L. Side at the head of which we pass a bad place & Mandans village S. S. (*2 miles above*). The hunters killed a buffalov

¹ 14 Sioux came to us on the L. S. with their guns cocked, believe them to be a war party they were naked except their Leagins. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

Of these savages: "Notwithstanding the coldness of the weather, they had not an article of clothing except their breech-clouts." — GASS (p. 79).

bull, they Say out of about 300 buffalo which they Saw, they did not, see one Cow. Great Deel of Beaver Sign. Several Cought every night.

Course Distance & Reffurences — 22^d Oct

N. 50° W.	3	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S.
N. 34° W.	3	Miles to the lower point on an Island on the L. S.
N. 34° W.	3	Miles to a p ^t on the S. S. passed a bad riffle or bar
North	1	Mile to a point on the L. S. a Deep bend to the S. S.
N. 24° W.	2	miles to a point on the S. Side.
	<u>12</u>	

23rd of October Tuesday 1804 —

a cloudy morning Some Snow Set out early, pass five Lodges which was Diserted, the fires yet burning we Suppose those were the Indians who robbed the 2 french Trappers a few days ago those 2 men are now with us going up with a view to get their property from the Indians thro. us. cold & cloudy camped on the L. S. of the river¹

(Saw at 12 miles passed old village on S. S. of Maharha^{* Indⁿ}, a band of Minnetarréas who now live between Mand^t & Minnetarres) (* Ah na ha wa's [Ahwahaways — BIDDLE] see note 10 May 1805)

Course Distance & reffurences

N. 45° E.	2	Miles to a Tree in the bend S. S.
N. 18° W.	1 ½	M ^{ls} to High land on S. S.
N. 65° W.	3	M ^{ls} to a tree in the bend L. S.
N. 33° W.	2 ½	M ^{ls} to a p ^t . on the L. S.
N. 18° W.	1	mile on the L. S.
N. 45° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S. S. passing as common many
	<u>13</u>	Sand bars

Course Distance & reffurences — 24th Oct.

N. 20° W.	1	Mile to a p ^t on the S. S.
N. 10° W.	2	Miles to a p ^t on the L. S. at this place the river has lately Cut thro forming a large Island to the S. S. (1)
N. 35° W.	2	Miles to an object on the S. S.
N. 64° W.	2	Miles to a point of high land on which the Mandins formerly lived (2)
	<u>7</u>	

¹ Near Sanger, N. D., a short distance south of Deer Creek. — Ed.

24th October Wednesday 1804.—

Set out early a cloudy day Some little Snow in the morning I am Something better of the Rhumitism in my neck. a butifull Countrey on both Sides of the river. the bottoms cov^d with wood, we have Seen no game on the river to day — a prof of the Indians hunting in the neighbourhood (1) passed a Island on the S. S. made by the river Cutting through a point, by which the river is Shortened Several miles. on this Isl^d we Saw one of the Grand Chiefs of the Mandins, with five Lodges hunting, this Chief met the Chief of the *Ricares* who accompanied us with great Cordiallity & serimony Smoked the pipe & Cap^t Lewis with the Interpeter went with the Chiefs to his Lodges at 1 mile distant, after his return we admited the Grand Chief & his brother for a few minits on our boat. proceeded on a Short distance and camped on the S. S. below the old village of the Mandins & *ricares*.¹ Soon after our land'g 4 mandins came from a camp above, the Ricares Chief went with them to their Camp,

Course Distance & Reffurances — 25th of October.

- N. 80° W. 3 Miles to a p^t on the L. Side passed an old Village (1)
 West 1 Mile on the L. Side
 S. 80° W. 1 Mile on the L. Side
 S. 60. W. 2 Miles to a p^t on the L. Side
 S. 30° W. 2 Miles to a Tree on the Larboard Side
 S. 33° W. 2 Miles to a point on the Starboard Side opposit a high hill

11

25th of October Thursday 1804.—

a cold morning. Set out early under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. by E. proceeded on, passed (1) the 3rd old Village of the Mandans which has been Des^d for many years, This village was situated on an eminance of about 40 foot above the water on the L. S. back for Several miles is a butifull Plain (2) at a Short distance above this old Village on a Continuation of the same eminance was Situated the Ricares Village (*two ola villages of ricaras one on top of high hill the 2^d below in the bottom.*) which has been avacuated only Six (*five*) years, (*about 3 or 4*

¹ Near Washburn, N. D. — Ed.

miles above Ricaras villages are 3 old villages of Mandans near together here they lived when the R's came for protection — afterwards moved where they now live.) above this Village a large and extensive bottom for Several miles in which the Squars raised ther Corn, but little timber near the Villages, on the S. S. below is a point of excellent timber, and in the point Several miles above is fine timber, Several parties of Mandins rode to the river on the S. S. to view us indeed they are continually in Sight Satisfying their Curioisities as to our apperance &c. We are told that the Seaux has latterly fallen in with & Stole the horses of the *Big bellies*,¹ on their way home they fell in with the Ossiniboin who killed them and took the horses. a frenchman has latterly been killed by the Indians on the Track to the tradeing establishment on the Ossinebine R. in the North of this place (or British fort) This frenchman has lived many years with the Mandins. we were frequently called on to land & talk to parties of the Mandins on the Shore; wind Shifted to the S. W at about 11 oClock and blew hard untill 3 oClk. clouded up river full of Sand bars & we are at a great loss to find the channel of the river, frequently run on the Sand bars which Delais us much passed a verry bad riffle of rocks in the evening by takeing the L. S. of a sand bar² and camped on a Sand point on the S. S. opposit a high hill on the L. S. Several Indians came to see us this evening, amongst others the Sun of the late Great Chief of the Mandins (*mourning for his father*), this man has his two little fingers off; on inquireing the cause, was told it was customary for this nation to Show their greaf by some testimony of pain, and that it was not uncommon for them to take off 2 Smaller fingers of the hand (*at the 2^d joints*) and some times more with other marks of Savage effection

¹ A common but somewhat erroneous translation of Gros Ventres, the French appellation of a tribe who form a division of the Arapaho people. The name Gros Ventres is also applied, as here, to the Siouan Minitaree (more correctly known as Hidarsa). See Mooney's Sketch of the Arapaho, *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892-93, pp. 954, 955. The Assiniboin are a division of the Siouan family; most of them dwell in British territory. — Ed.

² All obliged to get out and haul the boat over. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

The wind blew verry hard this evening from the S.W. verry cold R. Fields with the Rhumitism in his neck, P. Crusat with the Same complaint in his Legs — the party other wise is well, as to my self I feel but slight Simptoms of that disorder at this time,

26th of October Friday 1804 —

Set out early wind from the S. W. proceeded on saw numbers of the Mandins on Shore, we set the Ricare Chief on Shore, and we proceeded on to the Camp of two of their Grand Chiefs where we delayed a few minits, with the Chiefs and proceeded on takeing two of their Chiefs on board & Some of the heavy articles of his house hold, Such as earthen pots & Corn, proceeded on, at this Camp Saw a (M:) M^c Cracken Englishmon from the N.W. (*Hudson Bay*) Company¹ this man Came nine Days ago to trade for *horses* & *Buffalow* robes, — one other man came with him. the Indians continued on the banks all day. but little wood on this part of the river, many Sand bars and bad places, water much devided between them

We came too and camped on the L. S. about $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile below the 1st Mandin Town on the L. S.² soon after our arrival many men womin & children flocked down to See us, Cap^t Lewis walked to the village with the principal Chiefs and our interpters, my Rhumatic complaint increasing I could not go. if I was well only one would have left the Boat & party untill we niew the Disposition of the Ind^s. I Smoked with the Chiefs who came after. Those people ap^d much pleased with the Corn Mill which we were obliged to use, & was fixed in the boat.

¹ Early explorations by French and English navigators and traders led to the establishment (May 2, 1670) of the Hudson's Bay Company, with headquarters in London, who long held a monopoly of the fur trade in the great Northwest. In 1783-84 some of the leading Montreal merchants organized a rival association, known as the North West Company; but after a long and fierce competition for supremacy in the fur trade, the Hudson's Bay Company finally absorbed its rival (March 26, 1821). Hugh McCracken was an Irish "free trader," usually employed by the North West Company, who had accompanied David Thompson and Alexander Henry in their journeys through the Upper Missouri region. — Ed.

² Not far from Stanton, N. D. — Ed.

Course Distance & refⁿ — 26th Oct.

- N. 45° W. 1 M^l to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side
 N. 70° W. 1 M^l to a p^t on the S. S.
 S. 26. W. 2 M^h to a Camp of Mandans wood in the bend L. S.
 West. 1 M^h to a tree in bend L. S. passed a Small Creek
 N. 27° W. 3 M^h to the p^t Fort Mandan stands on Passing a Bluff
 8 of ind^t Coal L. S.
 N. 55° W. 1 M^l to a p^t on the L. S.
 S. 60° W. 2-M^h to the 1st Village of the Mandins Situated on the L.
 11 Side in an open Plain.

CHAPTER V

AMONG THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal, October 17—December 27, 1804

[Clark:]

27th of October Saturday 1804, Mandans. —

WE Set out arly came too at the Village on the L.S. this village is situated on an eminence of about 50 feet above the Water in a handsom plain it contains [blank space in MS.] houses¹ in a kind of Picket work, the houses are round and verry large containing several families, as also their horses which is tied on one Side of the enterance, a Description of those houses will be given hereafter, I walked up & Smoked a pipe with the Chiefs of the Village they were anxious that I would stay and eat with them, my indisposition provented my eating which displeased them, untill a full explanation took place, I returned to the boat and Sent 2 Carrots of Tobacco for them to smoke, and proceeded on, passed the 2^d Village and camped ops^d the Village of the *Weter soon*² [or *Ah wah har ways*] which is Situated on an eminence in a plain on the L.S. this Village is Small and Contains but few inhabitants.³ above this Village also above the Knife river on the Same Side of the Missouri the Big bellies Towns are Situated a further De-

¹ This village contains 40 or 50 lodges, built in the manner of those of the Rickarees. — GASS (p. 83).

² A division of the Hidatsa, called by the French Gens de Soulier. They were kindred to the Minitaree but maintained a separate tribal organization until about 1836. See Washington Matthews's *Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians* (Washington, 1877); McGee's account of this tribe in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1893-94, pp. 197, 198. — ED.

³ These Indians have better complexions than most other Indians, and some of the children have fair hair. . . . These people do not bury their dead, but place the body on a scaffold, wrapped in a buffaloe robe, where it lies exposed. — GASS (p. 83).

scription will be given hereafter as also of the Town of Mandans on this side of the river i. e. S. Side.

a fine warm Day we met with a frenchman by the name of *Jessomme*¹ which we imploy as an interpreter. This man has a wife & Children in the village. Great numbers on both Sides flocked down to the bank to view us as we passed. Cap' Lewis with the Interpreter walked down to the village below our camp. After delaying one hour he returned and informed me the Indians had returned to their village &c. &c., we Sent three twists [*carrots*] of Tobacco² by three young men, to the three villages above enviting them to come Down & Council with us tomorrow. many Indians came to view us Some stayed all night in the Camp of our party. We procured some information of M^r Jessomme of the Chiefs of the Different Nations

Course Distance 27th

West	2 Miles to a bend on the L. S. passing a Cole Bank
N. 10° W.	2 miles to a Wood on the S. S. pass ^d the 2 village on S. S.
	4

Sunday. 28th of October 1804 —

a windey Day, fair and clear many of the *Grosvantres* (or Big Bellies) and Watersones Came to See us and hear the Council the wind being So violently hard from the S.W. provented our going into Council, (indeed the Chiefs of the Mandans from the lower village Could not Cross, we made up the presents and entertained Several of the Curious Chiefs whome, wished to see the Boat which was verry curious to them viewing it as great medison, (*whatever is mysterious or unintelligible is called great medicine*) as they also Viewed my black Servent The Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans, Cap' Lewis & myself with an Interpreter walked up the river

¹ René Jessaume was originally a "free trader" (one to whom certain quantities of goods would be advanced by a trading company), and had spent many years among the Mandan. — ED.

² An article indispenceable in those cases. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

about $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles our views were to examine the Situation & Timber for a fort, we found the Situation good but the Timber scarce, or at least Small timber such as would (*not*) answer us, We consulted the Grand Chief in respect to the other Chiefs of the Different Villages he gave the names of 12. George Drewyer caught 2 Beaver above our Camp last night, we had Several presents from the woman of Corn boil'd homney, Soft Corn &c. &c. I present a jar (*earthen jar glazed*) to the Chiefs wife who received it with much pleasure. our men verry chearfull this evening. We Sent the Chiefs of the Gross Vantres to Smoke a pipe with the Grand Chief of the Mandans in his Village, & told them we would Speek tomorrow.

29th October Monday 1804. —

a fair fine morning after Brackfast we were visited by the old Cheaf of the *Big bellies* or [blank space in MS.] this man was old and had transfired his power to his Sun, who was then out at War against the Snake Indians who inhabit the Rocky Mountains.¹ at 10 oClock the S.W. wind rose verry high, we Collected the Chiefs and Commenced a Council ounder a orning, and our Sales Stretched around to keep out as much wind as possible, we delivered a long Speech the Substance of which [was] Similer to what we had Delivered to the nations below. the old Chief of the Grosvantres was verry restless before the Speech was half ended observed that he Could not wait long that his Camp was exposed to the hostile Indians, &c. &c. he was rebuked by one of the Chiefs for his uneasiness at Such a time as the present, we at the end of the Speech mentioned the *Recare* who accompanied us to make a firm Peace, they all Smoked with him (I gave this Cheaf a Dollar of the American Coin as a Meadel with which he was much pleased) In Council we presented him

¹ The Shoshoni, commonly called Snake Indians; the principal tribes of the Shoshonean family. They originally occupied the region now included in southern Montana and Idaho and western Wyoming; but were later forced across the Rocky Mountains by hostile prairie tribes. — ED.

with a certificate of his sin[c]errity and good Conduct &c. We also Spoke about the fur which was taken from 2 frenchmen by a Mandan, and inform^d of our intentions of Sending back the french hands. after the Council we gave the presents with much serimoney, and put the Meadels on the Chiefs we intended to make viz. one for each Town to whome we gave coats hats & flags, one Grand Chief to each nation to whome we gave meadels with the presidents likeness in Council we requested them to give us an answer tomorrow or as Soon as possible to Some Points which required their Deliberation. after the Council was over we Shot the air gun which appeared to astonish the nativs much, the greater part then retired Soon after.

The *Recare* Cheaf *Ar-ke-tar-na-shar* came to me this evening and tells me that he wishes to return to his Village & nation, I put him off Saying tomorrow we would have an answer to our talk to the Satisfaction & send by him a String of Wompom informing what had passed here. a Iron or Steel Corn Mill which we gave to the Mandins,¹ was verry thankfully received. The Prarie was Set on fire (or cougth by accident) by a young man of the Mandins, the fire went with such velocity that it burnt to death a man & woman, who Could not get to any place of Safty, one man a woman & Child much burnt and Several narrowly escaped the flame. a boy half white was saved unhurt in the midst of the flaim, Those ignerent people say this boy was Saved by the Great Medison Speret because he was white. The couse of his being Saved was a Green buffalow Skin was thrown over him by his mother who perhaps had more fore Sight for the pertection of her Son, and [I]ess for herself than those who escaped the flame, the Fire did not burn under the Skin leaving the grass round the boy. This fire passed our Camp last [night] about 8 oClock P.M. it went with great rapitidity and looked Tremendious .

¹ I saw [1806] the remains of an excellent large corn mill, which the foolish fellows had demolished to barb their arrows; the largest piece of it, which they could not break or work up into any weapon, was fixed to a wooden handle, and used to pound marrow-bones to make grease. — HENRY (*Journal*, Coues ed., i, p. 329).

The following Chiefs were made in Council to day

Ma-too-ton-ha or Lower Village of the Mandans

- 1st Chief *Sha-ha-ka* — or *Big White*¹
 2 do *Ka-gob-ha-mi.* or *Little Raven*

Roop-tar-hee or Second Village of the Mandans.

- 1st and Grand Chief, *Pose-cop-sa-he.* or *black cat*
 2nd Chief *Car-gar-no-mok-she* raven man Cheaf

Mah-bar-ha 3rd Village

- 1st Cheaf *Ta-tuck-co-pin-re-ha* white Buffalo robe unfolded

Me-ne-tar-re *Me-te-bar-tan*

- 1st Cheif — *Omp-se-ha-ra.* Black Mockerson
 2 do. *Ob-harb* or *Little fox*

We Sent the presents intended for the Grand Chief of the *Mi-ne-tar-re* or Big Belley, and the presents flag and Wompom by the old Chief and those intended for the Chief of the Lower Village by a young Chief.

The following Chiefs were recommended in addition to those viz. —

1st Village

Ob-hee-nar Big Man a *Chien* (a *Chayenne* prisoner adopted by them)
*Sho-ta-bar-ro-ra*² [or Coal — BIDDLE]

2^d Village

Taw-nub-e-o *Bel-lar-sara*
Ar-rat-tana-mock-she — Wolf man Chief

3rd Village

Min-nis-sur-ra-ree — Neighing horse
Lo-Cong-gar-ti-bar — old woman at a distance

¹ Brackenridge, who saw this chief in 1811, thus describes him (*Louisiana*, p. 261): "She-he-ke is a fat man, not much distinguished as a warrior, and extremely talkative, a fault much despised amongst the Indians." — ED.

² Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — ED.

4th Village

Mar-nob-tab. the big Steeler out at war (*who was then out at war & was killed af^{ly}*)

Mar-se-rus-se — tale of Callumet bird

Ea pa no pa — Two taled Calumet bird young Chief

W'ar ke ras sa The red Shield young Chief of Big belley — big town

5th Village

Shâ-bakô ho pin nee — Little Wolfs Medison

Ar-rat-toi-no-mook-ge — man wolf Chief (*at war*)

Cal-tar-co ta — cherry (*grows (growing) on a bush*) old Chief and father to the above ment¹ chief

Mau-pab'-pir-re-cos-sa too — This chief is near this hunting and a verry considerable man¹

To the 1st Chiefs we gave a Medal with the Impⁿ of the President of the U. S.

To the 2^d Chiefs a Medel of weaveing & Domestic animals.

To the 3^d Chiefs a Medel with the impression of a man Sowing Wheat.

30th October Tuesday 1804 —

Two chiefs came to have Some talk one the princapal of the lower Village the other the one who thought himself the principal man, & requested to hear Some of the Speech that was Delivered yesterday they were gratified, and we put the medal on the neck of the Big white to whome we had Sent Clothes yesterday & a flag, those men did not return from hunting in time to join the Councell, they were well pleased (2^d of those is a Chien) I took 8 men in a Small perogue and went up the river as fur as the 1st Island about 7 miles to see if a Situation could be got on it for our Winter quarters, found the wood on the Is^d as also on the p^t above so Distant from the water that, I did not think that we could get a good wintering ground there, and as all the white men here informed us that wood was scerce, as well as game above, we Deturmined to drop down a few miles near wood and game

¹ Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — Ed.

Course to the Island

N. 12° W.	3	M ^l to a Bluff 30 feet high above the point of wood. S. S.
N. 20° W.	2	M ^l to a tree under the bank about 20 feet high S. S. butifull plain
N. 30° W.	1½	Mls. to a p ^t of the Same Bluff 30 feet high under which there was coal S. S.
N. 45° W.	$\frac{1\frac{1}{2}}{7}$	M ^l to the Lower point of an Island Current on the L. S. this Is ^d ab ^t 1 mile long.

on my return found maney Ind^s at our Camp, gave the party a dram, they Danced as is verry Comⁿ in the evening which pleased the Savages much. Wind S. E.

31st of October Wednesday 1804—

a fine morning, the Chief of the Mandans Sent a 2^d Chief to invite us to his Lodge to receive Som corn & here what he had to say I walked down, and with great ceremoney was Seeted on a roabe by the Side of the Chief, he threw a handsom Roabe over me and after smokeing the pipe with Several old men around, the Chief spoke

Said he believed what we had told them, and that peace would be general, which not only gave him Satisfaction but all his people, they now could hunt without fear, & ther womin could work in the fields without looking every moment for the enemy, and put off their mockersons at night, (*sign of peace undress*) as to the *Ri[e]ares* we will Show you that we wish peace with all, and do not make War on any without cause, that Chief— pointing to the 2^d and Some brave men will accomp^y the ricare Chief now with you to his village & nation, to Smoke with that people, when you came up the Indians in the neighbouring Villages, as well as those out hunting when they heard of you had great expectations of receving presents those hunting imediately on hearing returned to the Village and all was Disappointed, and Some Disatisfied, as to himself he was not much So but his village was. he would go and see his great father &c. &c.

he had put before me 2 of the Steel traps which was robbed from the french a Short time ago, [and] about 12 bushels of

Corn which was brought and put before me by the woin of the Village after the Chief finish^d & Smoked in great ceremony, I answered the Speech which Satisfied them very much, and returned to the boat. met the principal Chief of the 3^d Village and the Little Crow both of which I invited into the Cabin and Smoked & talked with for about one hour. Soon after those Chiefs left us, the Grand Chief of the Mandans came Dressed in the Clothes we had given with his 2 small Suns, and requested to See the men Dance which they very readily gratified him in, the wind blew hard all the after part of the day from the N. E. and continud all night to blow hard from that point, in the morning it Shifted NW. Capt Lewis wrote to the N. W. Companys agent on the Orsiniboine River (*fort &c. there about 150 miles hence*) ab^t 9 Days march North of this place

1st of November. Thursday 1804 —

the Wind hard from the NW. M^r M^s Crackin a Trader Set out at 7 oClock to the Fort on the Ossiniboin by him Send a letter, (inclosing a Copy of the British Ministers protection) to the principal agent of the Company.¹ at about 10 oClock the Chiefs of the Lower Village came and after a Short time informed us they wished they would us to [*i. e.*, that we would — ED.] call at their Village & take Some corn, [They said] that they would make peace with the *Ricares* they never made war against them but after the *Rees* killed their Chiefs they killed them like the birds, and were tired (*of killing them*) and would Send a Chief and Some brave men to the *Ricares* to Smoke with that people. in the evening we Set out and fell down to the lower Village where Cap^t Lewis got out and continud at the village untill after night I proceeded on & landed on the S. S. at the upper point of the 1st Timber on the Starboard Side after landing & continuing all night dropped

¹ Coues reprints (i, pp. 187, 188) this letter, which he found in Biddle's literary magazine, *The Portfolio* (Philadelphia), vol. vii (1812), pp. 448, 449. The agent's name was Charles Chaboillez, representing the North West Company; Lewis and Clark wrote to him explaining the nature of their mission, and enclosing a copy of the passport granted them by Mr. Edward Thornton, of the British legation at Washington. — ED.

down to a proper place to build Cap: Lewis Came down after night, and informed me he intended to return the next morning by the perticular request of the Chiefs.

We passed the Villages on our Decent in View of Great numbers of the inhabitants

2nd November Friday 1804 —

This Morning at Daylight I went down the river with 4 men to look for a proper place to winter proceeded down the river three miles & found a place well Supl^d with wood, & returned, Cap: Lewis went to the Village to here what they had to Say & I fell down, and formed a Camp, near where a Small Camp of Indians were hunting cut down the Trees around our Camp, in the evening Cap: Lewis returned with a present of 11 bushels of Corn, our ricaree Chief Set out accompanied by one Chief (*of Mandans*) and Several Brave men (*of Minitarees and Mandans*), he called for Some small article which we had given (*promised*) but as I could not understand him he could not get [it] (*af^d he did get it*) the wind from the S. E. a fine day many Indians to view us to day

3rd of November Satterday 1804 —

a fine morning wind hard from the *West* we commence building our Cabins,¹ Send down in a perogue 6 men to hunt engaged one man (*a Canadian Frenchman who had been with the Chayenne Ind: on the Côte noir & last summer descended thence the Little Missouri — he was of our permanent.*)² Set the french who intend to return to build a perogue, many Indians pass to hunt, M: Jessomme (*Jesseaume*) with his Squar & children come down to live, as Interpter, we received (*hired*) a hors for our Service, in the evening the *Ka goh ha me* or little ravin came & brought us on his Squar (*who carried it on of Meal &c.* they Delayed all night we gave his Squar [*an her back*] about 60 W: of Dried Buffalow meat a roabe, & Pot

¹ A description of the manner in which the huts and fort were built is given by Gass (pp. 85, 86). — Ed.

² This was Baptiste Le Page, enlisted to take the place of John Newman, discharged. — Ed.

ax &] a few Small articles & himself a piece of Tobacco, the men were indulged with a Dram, this evening two Beaver Caught this morning, and one Trap Lost
(*The Frenchmen 9 engaged thus far now returning — but 2 or 3 volunteered to remain with us the winter which they did, & in the Spring left us.*)

4th November Sunday 1804 —

a fine morning we continu'd to cut Down trees and raise our houses, a M^r Chaubonie (*Chaboneau*), interpetor for the Gross Ventre nation Came to See us, and informed that he came Down with Several Indians from a hunting expedition up the river, to here [*hear*] what we had told the Indians in Council this man wished to hire as an interpiter, the wind rose this evening from the East & clouded up. Great numbers of Indians pass hunting and Some on the Return

5 November Monday 1804 —

I rose verry early and commenced raising the 2 range of Huts¹ the timber large and heavy all to carry on on Hand Sticks, cotton wood & Elm Som ash Small, our Situation Sandy, great numbers of Indians pass to and from hunting a camp of Mandans, A few miles below us Caught within two days 100 Goats, by Driveing them in a Strong pen, derected by a Bush fence widening from the pen &c. &c. the Greater part of this day Cloudy, wind moderate from the N. W. I have the Rhumitism verry bad, Cap Lewis writeing all Day we are told by our interpetor that 4 Ossiniboins Indians, have arrived at the Camps of the Gross Venters, & 50 Lodges are Comeing.²

¹ Fort Mandan, the wintering-place of the expedition, was located on the left bank of the Missouri, seven or eight miles below the mouth of Knife River; it was nearly opposite the site of the later Fort Clark. The latter post, "one of the most important on the river," was on the right bank; Chittenden says (*Amer. Fur Trade*, p. 957) that its area was 132 × 147 feet. On its site a fortified trading post was built in 1822; the later structure, which was named Fort Clark, was erected in 1831, as a post of the American Fur Company. See description and history of this locality, in Prince Maximilian's *Voyage* (Paris, 1841), ii, pp. 331-344.

² Drew M^r Gravelens instructions & discharged 2 french hands. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 222 of Codex C).

6th November Tuesday 1804 Fort Mandan —

last night late we wer awoke by the Sergeant of the Guard to See a Nothern light, which was light, (*but*) not red, and appeared to Darken and Some times nearly obscured, and open, (*divided about 20 degrees above horizon — various shapes — considerable space*) many times appeared in light Streeks, and at other times a great Space light & containing floating collomns which appeared to approach each other & retreat leaving the lighter space at no time of the Same appearance

This Morning I rose a[t] Day light the Clouds to the North appeared black at 8 oClock the [wind] began to blow hard from the N. W. and Cold, and Continued all Day M^r Jo Gravelin our ricare interpeter Paul *premor*, *Laguness*, [*Lajeunesse*] & 2 french Boys, who Came with us, Set out in a Small perogue, on their return to the recare nation & the Illinois, M^r Gravelin has instructions to take on the recares in the Spring &c. Continue to build the huts, out of Cotton Timber, &c. this being the only timber we have,

7th November Wednesday 1804 —

a temperate day we continued to building our hut, cloudy and foggey all day

8th Nov. Thursday 1804 —

a cloudy morning Jussome our (*Mandan*) inturpeter went to the Village, on his return he informed us that three English men had arrived from the Hudson Bay Company, and would be here tomorrow, we cont^d to build our huts, many Indians come to See us and bring their horses to Grass near us.

9th Nov. Friday 1804 —

a verry hard frost this morning we continue to build our Cabens, under many Disadvantages, Day cloudy wind from the NW. Several Indians pass with flying news (*reports*), we got a white weasel, (Taile excepted which was black at the end) of an Indian Cap^t Lewis walked to the hill ab^t $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile. we are Situated in a point of the Missouri North Side in a Cotton wood Timber, this Timber is tall and heavy containing

an imence quantity of water Britle (brittle) & Soft fine food for Horses to winter (as is Said by the Indians) The Mandans Graze their horses in the Day on Grass, and at night give them a Stick (*an arm full*) of Cotton wood (*boughs*) to eate, Horses Dogs & people all pass the night in the Same Lodge or round House, Cov^d with earth with a fire in the middle¹ great number of wild gees pass to the South, flew very high.

10th November Saturday 1804—

rose early continued to build our fort numbers of Indians came to See us a Chief Half Pania came & brought a Side of a Buffalow, in return We Gave Some fiew small things to himself & wife & Son, he crossed the river in the Buffalow Skin Canoo & and, the Squar took the Boat (*on her back*) and proceeded on to the Town 3 miles the Day raw and cold wind from the NW., the Gees Continue to pass in gangues as also brant to the South, Some Ducks also pass

11th November Sunday 1804. Fort Mandan

a cold Day continued at work at the Fort Two men cut themselves with an ax, The large Ducks pass to the South an Indian gave me several roles of parched meat two Squars of the Rock mountains, purchased from the Indians by a frenchmen (*Chaboneau*) came down The Mandans out hunting the Buffalow

12th November Monday 1804—

a verry Cold night early this morning the Big White principal Chief of the lower Village of the Mandans came Down, he pack^d about 100^{lb} of fine meet on his squar for us, we made Some Small presents to the Squar, & child gave a Small ax [with] which She was much pleased 3 men Sick with the

¹ These earth lodges of the Mandan differentiated them from the other Indians of the plains, and are described by all early travellers. See Maximilian, Prince of Weid's *Voyage in the Interior of North America* (London, 1843); Catlin's *North American Indians* (London, 1841); and Washington Matthews's "Earth Lodge in Art," in *American Anthropologist*, 1901, pp. 1-12. This lodge is the prototype of the settler's sod-house, but is seldom used now by the Mandan. For their present condition see Wheeler's *Wonderland*, 1903, pp. 19-36. — ED.

[blank in MS.], Several, Wind Changeable very cold evening, freeing all day some ice on the edges of the river.

Swans passing to the South, the Hunters we Sent down the river to hunt has not returned

“The interpreter says that the Mandan nation as they (old men) Say came out of a Small lake (*subterraneous Village & a lake*) where they had Gardins, many years ago they lived in Several Villages on the Missouri low down,¹ the Small pox destroyed the greater part of the nation and reduced them to one large village and Some Small ones, all the nations before this maladey was affr^d (*afraid*) of them, after they were reduced the Seaux and other Indians waged war, and killed a great many, and they moved up the Missourie, those Indians Still continued to wage war, and they moved Still higher, until got in the Countrey of the Panias, whith this N^o they lived in friendship many years, inhabiting the Same neighbourhood untill that people waged war, they moved up near the *Watersoons & Winataras* where they now live in peace with those nations, the Mandans Speake a language peculial to themselves very much [blank in MS.] they can raise about 350 men the Winataries about 80 (*the Wittassoons or Maharha 80*) and the Big bellies (*or Minitarees*) about 600 or 650 men. the Mandans and Seaux have the Same word for water. The *Big bellies* or *Winetaries* & ravin (*Wattassoon as also the Crow or Raven*) Indians Speake nearly the Same language and the presumption is they were origionally the Same nation The Ravin Indians “have 400 Lodges & about 1200 men, & follow the Buffalow, or hunt for their Subsistance in the plains & on the Court Noi & Rock Mountains, & are at war with the Siaux [and] Snake Indians

The Big bellies & Watersoons are at war with the Snake Indians & Seaux and were at war with the *Ricares* untill we made peace a few days pass^d. The Mandans are at war with all who make war [*on them, at present with the Seaux*] only, and wish to be at peace with all nations, Seldom the ogressors

¹ See Maximilian's detailed account of the Mandan myths of the creation, their tribal origin, and their migrations, with their religious beliefs, superstitions, and customs, in his *Voyage*, ii, pp. 369-484. — ED.



MUE-TUTTA-FANGKUSCH, *Mandau, China*

13th Nov. Tuesday 1804 —

The Ice began to run in the river $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 oClock P.M. we rose early & onloaded the boat before brackfast except, the Cabin, & stored away in a Store house at 10 oClock A.M. the Black Cat the Mandin Chief and *Lagree* (*Fr. name*) *Che Chank* a Chief & 7 men of note visited us at Fort Mandan, I gave him a twist of Tobacco to Smoke with his people & a Gold Cord, with a view to know him again, This nation consists (*This chief was one of 3 bands of Assⁿ who rove between the Missouri & Assⁿ river. The 3 consist*) of about 600 men, hunt in the Plains & winter and trade on the Ossiniboin River, (*here describe all Assⁿ*) they are the Decendants of the Seaux and Speake their language, they come to the nations in this quarter to trade or (make presents) for horses¹ the Method of this Kind of Trafick by adoption Shall be explained hereafter etc., Snow'd all day, the Ice ran thick and air Cold.

14th of November Wednesday 1804. Fort Mandan —

a cloudy morning, ice runing verry thick, river rose $\frac{1}{2}$ Inch last night Some snow falling, only two Indians visit us to day owing to a Dance at the Village last night in Con-

¹ La Verendrye, who visited the Mandan in 1738, thus speaks of their relations with their northern neighbors: "The Assiliboille [Assiniboin], although numerous, and strong and robust men, are not brave; they are in great fear of the Sioux, whom they regard as braver. The Mantannes [Mandan] know their weakness, and profit by [it] on occasion. . . . Public notice was given throughout the village, warning every one to be ready to march on the second day after, the 30th of the month; this made some further delay among the Mantannes, who knew well how to profit thereby in trading their grain, tobacco, peltries, and painted feathers, which they know the Assiliboille highly value. The latter had brought, and were now giving in exchange, muskets, axes, kettles, powder, bullets, knives, and bodkins. The Mantannes are far more crafty in trade, and in all other relations, than are the Assiliboille, who are constantly duped by them. . . . The Assiliboille had purchased everything which their means permitted, such as painted buffalo-robcs; skins of deer and antelope well dressed, and ornamented with fur; bunches of painted feathers; peltries; wrought garters, headdresses, and girdles. These people [the Mandan] dress leather better than do any other tribes, and do very fine work on furs and feathers, which the Assiliboille are not capable of doing. They are cunning traders, despoiling the Assiliboille of all that they may possess." — See his "Journal," in *Canad. Archives Rep.*, 1889, p. 14. — ED.

cluding a serimony of adoption,¹ and interchange of property, between the Ossinboins, Christinoes (*Knistenaux*)² and the nations of this neighbourhood. we Sent one man by land on horseback to know the reason of the Delay of our hunters, this evening 2 frenchmen who were *traping* below Came up with 20 beaver. we are compelled to use our Pork which we doe Spearingly for fear of some falur in precureing a Sufficiency from the woods.

our Interpreter informs that 70 Lodges one of 3 bands of Assiniboins & Some Crestinoes, are at the Mandan Village. The Crestinoes are ab! 300 (240) men Speak the Chipaway Language, the[y] live near Fort De prari (*on Assiniboin & Assaskasharwan* [Saskatchewan — ED.] *they are bands of the Chippeways*)

15th of November Thursday 1804 —

a cloudy morning, the ice run much thicker than yesterday. at 10 oClock G Drewyer³ & the frenchman we Dispatched yesterday came up from the Hunters, who is incamped about 30 miles below. after about one hour we Dispatched a man with orders to the hunters to proceed on without Delay thro the floating ice, we sent by the man Tin, to put on the parts of the Perogue exposed to the ice & a toe roape. The wind Changeable all hands work at their huts untill 1 oClock at night. Swans passing to the South — but few fowls (water) to be Seen not one Indian came to our fort to day

¹ The ceremony of adoption into a tribe or family is one which has always prevailed among the North American aborigines, and is extended to any persons (red or white) to whom they wish to show special friendship or honor. See Henry's description of the ceremony (*Journal*, i, pp. 388-390). — ED.

² The savages now known as Cree, the appellation of various nomadic tribes who range the region north of Lake Superior and west toward the Assiniboin River; they are of Algonquian stock. — ED.

³ George Drouillard (Drewyer) was son of Pierre Drouillard, an interpreter for the British at Detroit in the latter part of the eighteenth century. The father is said to have rescued Simon Kenton from death at the stake (about 1779). George was slain (May, 1810) in a fight with the Blackfeet. — ED.

16th November Friday 1804—

a verry white frost all the trees all covered with ice, cloudy, all the men move into the huts which is not finish! Several Indians come to camp to day, The *Ossiniboins* is at the Big bellie Camp, some trouble like to take place between them from the loss of horses &c. as is Said by an old Indian who visited us with 4 Buffalow robes & corn to trade for a Pistol which we did not let him have, men imployd untill late in dobing¹ their huts, Some horses Sent down to Stay in the woods near the fort, to prevent the Ossniboins Steeling them.

17th November Saturday 1804—

a fine morning, last night was Cold, the ice thicker than yesterday, Several Indians visit us, one Chief Stayed all day we are much engaged about our huts.

18th Nov. Sunday 1804—

a cold morning Some wind the Black Cat, Chief of the Mandans came to see us, he made great inquiries respecting our fashions, he also Stated the Situation of their nation, he mentioned that a Council had been held the day before and it was thought advisable to put up with the resent insults of the *Ossiniboins* & *Christinoes* untill they were convinced that what had been told them by us [was true—ED.], M! Evin had deceived them & we might also, he promised to return & furnish them with guns & amunition, we advised them to remain at peace & that they might depend upon Getting Supplies through the Channel of the *Missourie*, but it required time to put the trade in operation. The *Ossiniboins* &c. have the trade of those nations in their power and treat them badly, as the *Soux* does the *Ricarees*,² and they cannot resent, for fear of losing their trade.

¹ That is, "daubing" with clay. — ED.

² Biddle adds: "By their vicinity to the British [at Hudson Bay] they get all the supplies, which they withhold or give at pleasure to the remoter Indians." — ED.

19th Nov. Monday —

a Cold day the ice continue to run our Perogue of Hunters arrive with 32 Deer, 12 Elk & a Buffalow, all of this meat we had hung up in a Smoke house, a timely supply. Several Indians here all day. the wind blew hard from the N.W. by W. our men move into their huts, Several little Indian aneckd!¹ [anecdotes] told me to day

20th November Tuesday 1804 —

Cap Lewis & my Self move into our hut,¹ a very hard wind from the W. all the after part of the day a temperate day Several Indians came Down to Eat fresh meat, three Chiefs from the 2^d Mandan Village Stay all Day, they are verry Curious in examining our works. Those Chiefs informs us that the Souex settled on the Missourie above Dog (*Chayenne*) River, threten to attacked them this winter, and have treated 2 Ricares who carried the pipe of peace to them very roughly, whiped & took their horses from them &c. &c. & is much displeasd with the Ricares for making a peace with the Mandans &c. &c. through us, we gave them a Satisfactory answer. &c. &c.

21st Nov. Wednesday —

a fine Day despatched a perogue and collected stone for our Chimneys, Some wind from the S.W. arrange our different articles. Maney Indians visit us to day, G D hurd his hand verry bad all the party in high Spirits. The river Clear of ice, & riseing a little.²

¹ Biddle here describes (i, pp. 128, 129) the fort, much as Gass does. — Ed.

² At this point Biddle describes (i, pp. 129–132) the location, history, and mutual relations of the tribes about Fort Mandan. There are five villages, “the residence of three distinct nations: the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetarees.” The Mandan may number about 350 warriors. The Ahnahaway (“people whose village is on a hill”) live at the mouth of Knife River, in a village called Mahaha; “they are called by the French, Soulier Noir or Shoe Indians, by the Mandans Wattasoons; and their whole force is about fifty men.” Half a mile above Mahaha on the Knife River is a village of the Minitaree surnamed Metaharta (“of the willows”), numbering 150 warriors; and farther up that stream is another, of the Minitaree proper, who have 450 men. “These Minnetarees are part of the great

22nd of November Thursday 1804—

a fine morning Dispatched a perogue and 5 men under the Derrection of Sergeant Pryor to the 2nd Village for 100 bushels of Corn in ears which M^r Jessomme, let us have [*did not get more than 30 bushels*]. I was allarmed about 10 oClock by the Sentinal, who informed that an Indian was about to kill his wife in the interpeters fire about 60 yards below the works, I went down and Spoke to the fellow about the rash act which he was like to commit and forbid any act of the kind near the fort. Some misunderstanding took place between this man & his fife [*wife*] about 8 days ago, and she came to this place, & continued with the Squars of the interpeters, (*he might lawfully have killed her for running away*) 2 days ago She returned to the vill'ge. in the evening of the Same day She came to the interpeters fire appearently much beat, & Stabed in 3 places. We Derected that no man of this party have any intercourse with this woman under the penalty of Punishment. he the Husband observed that one of our Serjeants Slept with his wife & if he wanted her he would give her to him, We derected the Serjeant (Odway) to give the man Some articles, at which time I told the Indian that I believed not one man of the party had touched his wife except the one he had given the use of her for a nite, in his own bed, no man of the party Should touch his squar, or the wife of any Indian, nor did I believe they touch a woman if they knew her to be the wife of another man. and advised him to take his squar home and live hapily together in future, at this time the Grand Chief of the nation arrived, & lectured him, and they both went off appearently dis (*dissatisfied*)

nation called Fall Indians, who occupy the intermediate country between the Missouri and the Saskaskawan. The name of Grosventres, or Bighellies, is given to these Minnetarees, as well as to all the Fall Indians." Mooney says (*U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892-93, p. 955) that Grosventres signifies "belly-people" (i. e., grasping and selfish, "spongers"); that the Arapaho division of that name are the "Gros Ventres of the Prairie"; while the Hidatsa or Minitaree with whom Lewis and Clark wintered, are sometimes called "Gros Ventres of the Missouri." See McGee's interpretation of the term Grosventres (*ut supra*, 1893-94, p. 197). Valuable information regarding all these tribes is given by Washington Matthews, in his *Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians*. — Ed.

The Grand Chief continued (*with us*) all day, a warm Day fair afternoon many Indian anecdotes our Chief & his family stay all night.

23rd—

a fair warm Day, wind from the S.E. Send after Stone several men with bad colds, one man Shields with the Rhumism the river on a Stand having rose 4 inches in all.

24th of November Saturday 1804—

a warm Day Several men with bad colds we continued to cover our Huts with hewed Punchins,¹ finish^d a Cord to draw our boat out on the bank, this is made of 9 strans of Elk Skin, the wind from the S.E.

25th of Nov. Sunday 1804—

a fine day warm & pleasant Cap^t Lewis 2 Interpreters & 6 men Set out to see the Indians in the different Towns & camps in this neighbourhood, we Continu to cover & dob our huts, two Chiefs came to See me to day one named Wau-ke-res-sa-ra, a Big belley, and the first of that Nation who has Visited us Since we have been here, I gave him a handkerchef Paint & a lace band, and the other Some few articles, and paid a perticular attention which pleased them very much, the inturpeters being all with Cap^t Lewis I could not talk to them. We Completed our huts. Several men with bad Colds, river falls 1½ inch

[Memorandum on p. 221 of this Codex:] Capt. Lewis with Chabono & Jessomme set out to visit the Indian hunting camps, Spent the evening with the black mockerson, the principal Chief of the little village of Big billies.

26th of Nov. 1804 Monday Fort Mandan—

a little before day light the wind shifted to the N.W. and blew hard and the air keen & cold all day, Cloudy and much the appearance of Snow; but little work done to day it being cold &c.

¹ The "punchons" used in pioneer architecture were simply logs hewn on one side, so as to form a tolerably level surface for floor or ceiling. — ED.

[Memorandum, p. 220:] Visited the upper camps of the big bellies and returned to the lower Camp & passed a second night.

27th of November Tuesday 1804 —

a cloudy morning after a verry cold night, the River crouded with floating ice Wind from the NW. finished Dobing Cap^t Lewis returned from the Villages with two Chiefs *Mar-noh-toh* & *Man-ness-sur ree* & a considerate [considerable] man with the party who accompanied him, The Menetaries, (or Big bellies) were allarmed at the tales told them by the Mandans viz : that we intended to join the *Seaux* to Cut off them in the Course of the Winter, many Circumstances Combin'd to give force to those reports i. e. the movements of the interpeters & their families to the *Fort*, the strength of our work &c. &c. all those reports was contredicted by Cap^t Lewis with a conviction on the minds of the Indians of the falsity of those reports. the Indians in all the towns & Camps treated Cap^t Lewis & the party with Great respect, except one of the principal Chiefs *Mar-par-pa-parrapas-a-100* or (Horned Weasel) who did not chuse to be Seen by the Cap^t & left word that he was not at home &c. Seven Traders arrived from the fort on the Ossinoboin from the NW. Company one of which Lafrance took upon himself to speak unfavourably of our intentions &c. the principal M^r *La Rock* (& M^r M^r Kensey) was informed of the Conduct of their interpeter & the Consequences if they did not put a Stop to unfavourable & ill founded assursions &c. &c.¹

¹ The names of these traders were : François Antoine Larocque (in charge of this trading expedition), Charles McKenzie, Baptiste Lafrance, and four voyageurs. The journals of both Larocque and McKenzie have been published by L. R. Masson, in his *Bourgeois de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest* (Quebec, 1889), i, pp. 299-393 ; they mention their relations with Lewis and Clark, near whom they remained during that winter. Larocque describes the objects and policy of the Americans, and says : " During the time I was there a very grand plan was schemed, but its being realized is more than I can tell, although the Captains say they are well assured it will. . . . The fort is made so strong as to be almost cannon-ball proof. . . . They have a very expert smith who is always employed making different things, and working for the Indians, who are grown very fond of them, although they disliked them at first." But McKenzie says : " The Indians accepted of clothing, but, notwithstanding, they could not be reconciled to like these 'strangers,' as they called them." — ED.

The two Chiefs much pleased with ther treatment & the Cherefullness of the party, who Danced to amuse them &c. &c.

The river fall 2 Inches verry Cold and began to Snow at 8 oClock PM and continued all night. Some miss understanding with Jussomme¹ & his woman at Day the Snow seased

28th Nov. Wednesday 1804 —

a cold morning wind from the N.W. river full of floating ice, began to Snow at 7 oClock *a m* and continued all day. at 8 oClock the *Poss-coss-so-he* or Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans Came to See us, after Showing those Chiefs many thing[s] which was Curiosities to them, and Giving a few presents of Curious Handkerchiefs arm ban[d]s & paint with a twist of Tobacco they departed at 1 oClock much pleased, at parting we had Some little talk on the Subject of the British Trader M. Le rock Giving meadels & Flags, and told those Chiefs to impress it on the minds of their nations that those simbles were not to be received by any from them, without they wished [to] incur the displeasure of their Great American Father. a verry disagreeable day no work done to day river fall 1 Inch to day

29th November Thursday 1804 —

A verry cold windey day wind from the N.W. by W. Some snow last night the detph of the Snow is various in the wood about 13 inches, The river Closed at the Village above and fell last night two feet, M: *La Rock* and one of his men Came to visit us, we informed him what we had herd of his intentions of makeing Chiefs &c. and forbid him to give Meadels or flags to the Indians, he Denied haveing any Such intention, we agreed that one of our interpeters Should

¹ Alexander Henry thus characterizes Jusseume (*Journal*, Coues ed., N. Y., 1897, i, p. 401): "that old sneaking cheat, whose character is more despicable than the worst among the natives." — ED.

Speak for him on Conditions he did not say any thing more than what tended to trade alone. he gave fair promises &c.¹

Sergeant Pryor in taking down the mast put his Shoulder out of Place, we made four trials before we replaced it a cold afternoon wind as usual N W. river begin to rise a little.

30th of November Friday 1804 —

This morning at 8 oClock an Indian called from the other Side and informed that he had Something of Consequence to Communicate, we Sent a perogue for him & he informed us as follows. Viz: " five men of the Mandan nation out hunting in a S.W. derection about Eight Leagues, was Suprised by a large party of *Seeoux* & *Panies*, one man was Killed and two wounded with arrows & 9 Horses taken, 4 of the We ter soon nation was missing, and they expected to be attacked by the *Souex* &c. &c. we thought it well to Show a Disposition to ade and assist them against their enemies, perticularly those who Came in oppersition to our Councels; and I Deturmined to go to the town with Some men, and if the *Seeoux* were coming to attact the Nation to Collect the worriers from each Village and meet them, those Ideas were also those of Cap^t Lewis, I crossed the river in about an hour after the arrival of the Indian express with 23 men including the interpeters and flank^d the Town & came up on the back part. The Indians not expecting to receive Such Strong aide in So Short a time was much supprised, and a littled allarmed at the formadable appearence of my party. The principal Chiefs met me Some Distance from the town (say 200 yards) and invited me in to town. I ord[ered] my p^{ty} into dif^r lodges

¹ Laroque gives the same account (Masson's *Bourg. Nord-Ouest*, i, p. 304), and adds: "As I had neither flags nor medals, I ran no risk of disobeying those orders, of which I assured them." The interpreter lent to the British was Charboneau. McKenzie thus describes (*ut supra*, p. 336) the method of Lewis and Clark's communications with the Indians: "A mulatto, who spoke bad French and worse English, served as interpreter to the Captains, so that a single word to be understood by the party required to pass from the Natives to the woman [Sacajawea, Indian wife of Charboneau, who could not speak English], from the woman to the husband, from the husband to the mulatto, from the mulatto to the captains." — ED.

&c. I explained to the nation the cause of my coming in this formidable manner to their Town, was to assist and Chastise the enemies of our Dutifull Children, I requested the Grand Cheif to repeat the Circumstancies as they hapined, which he did as was mentioned by the *express* in the morning. I then informed them that if they would assemble their warriors and those of the Different Towns, I would [go] to meet the Army of *Soux* &c. chastise them for takeing the blood of our dutifull Children &c. after a conversation of a few minits amongst themselves, one Chief, the Big Man (*Cien*) (*a Chayenne*). Said they now Saw that what we hade told them was the trooth, when we expected the enemies of their Nation was Comeing to attact them, or had Spilt their blood [we] were ready to protect them, and kill those who would not listen to our Good talk. his people had listened to what we had told them and cearelessly went out to hunt in Small parties believing themselves to be Safe from the other nations, and have been killed by the *Panies* & *Seaux*, "I knew Said he that the *Panies* were liers, and told the old Chief who Came with you (to Confirm a piece with us) that his people were *liers* and bad men and that we killed them like the Buffalow, when we pleased, we had made peace several times and you Nation have always commenced the war, we do not want to kill you, and will not Suffer you to kill us or Steal our horses, we will make peace with you as our two fathers have drected, and they Shall See that we will not be the Ogressors, but we fear the *Ricars* will not be at peace long. "My father those are the words I spoke to the *Ricare* in your presents. you See they have not opened their ears to your good Councils but have Spuilt our blood." two *Ricaries* whom we sent home this day for fear of our peoples killing them in their greaf, informed us when they came here Several days ago, that two Towns of the *Ricars* were makeing their Mockersons, and that we had best take care of our horses &c." a numbers "of *Seaux* were in their Towns, and they believed not well disposed towards us. four of the *Wetersoons* are now absent they were to have been back in 16 days, they have been out 24 we fear they have fallen. My father the Snow is deep

and it is cold our horses Cannot travel thro the plains, those people who have Spilt our blood have gone back? if you will go with us in the Spring after the Snow goes off we will raise the warriers of all the Towns & Nations around about us, and go with you."

I told this nation that we should be always willing and ready to defend them from the insults of any nation who would dare to Come to doe them injury dureing the time we would remain in their neighbourhood, and request^d that they would inform us of any party who may at any time be discovered by their Patroles or Scouts; I was sorry that the snow in the Plains had fallen so Deep Sence the Murder of the young Chief by the Sieoux as prevented their horses from traveling. I wished to meet those Seeoux & all others who will not open their ears, but make war on our dutifull Children, and let you see that the Warriars of your Great father will chastize the enimies of his dutifull Children the Mandans, Wettersoons & Winetarees, who have open^d their ears to his advice. you say that the Panies or Ricares were with the *Seeaux*, some bad men may have been with the *Seeaux* you know there is bad men in all nations, do not get mad with the recarees untill we know if those bad men are Counter-nanc^d by their nation, and we are convs^d those people do not intend to follow our Councils. You know that the Seeaux have great influence over the ricarees, and perhaps have led Some of them astray you know that the Ricarees, are Dependant on the Seeaux for their guns, powder, & Ball, and it was policy in them to keep on as good tirms as possible with the Seaux untill they had Some other means of getting those articles &c. &c. You know yourselves that you are compelled to put up with little insults from the *Christinoes* & *Ossinaboins* (or Stone Ind^s) because if you go to war with those people, they will prevent the traders in the North from bringing you Guns, Powder & Ball and by that means distress you verry much, but whin you will have certain Supplies from your Great American father of all those articles you will not Suffer any nation to insult you &c. after about two hours conversation on various Subjects all of which tended towards their

Situation &c. I informed them I should return to the fort, the Chief said they all thanked me very much for the fatherly protection which I shewed towards them, that the village had been crying all the night and day for the death of the brave young man, who fell but now they would wipe away their tears, and rejoice in their fathers protection, and cry no more.

I then Paraded & Crossed the river on the ice and Came down on the N. Side, the Snow So Deep, it was very fatiguing arrived at the fort after night, gave a little Taffee¹ (*dram to my party*), a cold night the river rise to its former hite. The Chief frequently thanked me for coming to protect them — and the whole village appeared thankfull for that measure

1st of December Saturday 1804 —

Wind from the NW. all hands ingaged in gitting pickets &c. at 10 oClock the half brother of the man who was killed came & inform^d us that after my departure last night *Six Chiens* so called by the french or *Shar ha* Indians had arrived with a pipe and said that their nation was at one days march and intended to come & trade &c. three Panies had also arrived from the nation, (*their nation was then within 3 days march & were coming on to trade with us Three Pawnees accomp^d these Chayennes The mandans call all ricaras Pawnees don't use the name of ric^s but the ric^s call themselves Ric^s*) The Mandans apprehended danger from the *Shar has* as they were at peace with the *Seaux*; and wished to Kill them and the Ricaries (or panies) but the Chiefs informed the nation it was our wish that they Should not be hurt, and forbid their being killed &c." We gave a little Tobacco &c. & this man Departed well satisfied with our Councils and advice to him.

in the evening a M: G Henderson [arrived — ED.] in the employ of the *hudsons bay* Company sent to trade with the *Gros ventre*, or *Big bellies* so called by the french traders

¹ A corruption of "tafia," defined as "an inferior kind of rum, distilled from sugar refuse or from coarse molasses." Coues (*L. and C.*, p. 215) asserts that this is "a Malay word which we get from the French by way of the West Indies. We call this liquor Jamaica." — ED.

2nd of December Sunday 1804—

The latter part of last night was verry warm and continued to thaw untill [blank in MS.] oClock when the wind Shifted to the North at 11 oClock the Chiefs of the Lower Village of the Mandans [came] with many of their young men and 4 of the *Sar-ha's* who had come to Smoke with the pipe of Peace with the Mandans, we explained to them our intentions our views and advised them to be at peace, Gave them a flag for their nation, Some Tobacco with a Speech to Dilever to their nation on their return, also Sent by them a letter to M^r Tabbo & Gravoline, at the Ricares Village, to interseed in proventing Hostilities, and if they Could not effect those measures to Send & inform us of what was going on, Stateing to the Indians the part we intend to take if the Rickores & Seaux did not follow our Derections and be at peace with the nations which we had addopted. we made Some few Small presents to those *Sar-ha's* and also Some to the Mandans & at 3 oClock they all Departed well pleased, having Seen many Curesosttics, which we Showed them. river rise one inch

3rd December Monday 1804—

a fine morning the after part of the day cold & windey the wind from the NW. the Father of the Mandan who was killed came and made us a present of Some Dried Simmins (*Pumpkins*) & a little pimecon, (*pemitigon*) we made him Some small preasents for which he was much pleased

4th of December Tuesday 1804—

a cloudy raw Day wind from the N.W. the Black cat and two young Chiefs Visit us and as usial Stay all Day the river rise one inch fini[s]h the main *bastion*, our interpet! (*Jes-saume*) we discover to be assumeing and discontent'd.¹

¹ Biddle here makes a brief statement of the religious belief and origin-myth of the Mandan; cf. therewith Catlin's *Illust. N. Amer. Inds.* (London, 1866), i, pp. 156, 157, 177-183, and Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 418-436. — ED.

5th December Wednesday — 1804

a cold raw morning wind from the S.E. Some Snow, two of the NW. Company Came to See us, to let us Know they intended to Set out for the establishment on the ossinniboin River in two Days, & their party would Consist of 5 men, Several Indians also visited us one brought Pumpkins or Simnins as a present. a little Snow fell in the evening at which time the wind Shifted round to N.E.

6th of December Thursday 1804 Fort Mandan —

The wind blew violently hard from the N.N.W. with Some Snow the air Keen and cold. The Thermometer at 8 oClock A.M. Stood at 10 dg^s above 0. at 9 oClock a man & his squar Came down with Some meat for the interpeter his dress was a par mockersons of Buffalow Skin & P. Legins of Goat Skin & a Buffalow robe, 14 ring of Brass on his fingers, this Metel (*ornament*) the Mandans ar verry fond off. cold after noon river rise 1½ Inch to day.

[Memorandum, p. 220:] Cap^t Clark Set out with a hunting party Killed 8 Buffalow & returned next day

7th of December Friday 1804 —

a verry cold day wind from the NW. the Big White Grand Chief of the 1st Village, came and informed us that a large Drove of Buffalow was near and his people was wating for us to join them in a chase Cap^t Lewis took 15 men & went out joined the Indians, who were at the time he got up, Killing the Buffalow on Horseback with arrows which they done with great dexterity,¹ his party killed 10 Buffalow, *five* of which we got to the fort by the assistance of a horse in addition to what the men Packed on their backs. one cow was killed on the ice after drawing her out of a vacancey in the ice in which She had fallen, and Butchered her at the fort. those we did

¹ Biddle gives (i, p. 140) a more detailed account of the Indians' buffalo hunt. Gass says (p. 89) that Lewis took eleven men with him, who killed 11 buffalo, while the Indians killed 30 or 40. — ED.

not get in was taken by the indians under a Custom which is established amongst them i.e. any person seeing a buffalo lying without an arrow Sticking in him, or some particular mark takes possession, many times (as I am told) a hunter who kills many Buffalo in a chase only Gets a part of one, all meat which is left out all night falls to the *Wolves* which are in great numbers, always in [the neighborhood of — E.D.] the Buffalows. the river Closed opposit the fort last night $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches thick, The Thermometer Stood this Morning at 1 d. below 0. three men frost bit badly to day.

8th. December Satturday 1804 —

a verry Cold morning, the Thermometer Stood at 12° below 0 which is 42° below the freesing point, wind from the NW. I with 15 men turned out (*Indians joined us on horseback shot with arrows rode along side of buffaloe*) and killed 8 buffalo & one Deer, one Cow and calf was brought in, two Cows which I killed at 7 miles Ds^t I left 2 men to Skin & keep off the Wolves, and brought in one Cow & a calf, in the evening on my return to the fort Saw great numbers of Buffalo Coming into the Bottom on both Sides of the river this day being Cold Several men returned a little *frost bit*, one of [the] men with his feet badly frost bit my Servents feet also *frosted* & his P——s a little, I felt a little fatigued haveing run after the Buffalo all day in Snow many Places 18 inches Deep, generally 6 or 8, two men hurt their hips verry much in Slipping down. The Indians kill great numbers of Buffalo to day. 2 reflectings Suns to day.

9th December Sunday 1804 —

The Thermometer Stood this morning at 7 above 0, wind from the E. Cap^t Lewis took 18 men & 4 horses (*3 hired 1 bought*) and went out [to] Send in the meet killed yesterday and kill more, the Sun Shown to day Clear, both interpeters went to the Villages to day at 12 oClock two Cheifs came loaded with meat, one with a dog & Slay also loaded with meat, Cap^t Lewis Sent 4 Hors's loaded with meat, he continued at the hunting Camp near which the[y] killed 9 buffalo.

10th Monday Dec. 1804 Fort Mandan—

a verry Cold Day The Thermometer to day at 10 & 11 Degrees. below 0.¹ Cap^t Lewis returned, to day at 12 oClock leaving 6 Men at the Camp to prepare the meat for to pack 4 Horse loads came in, Cap^t Lewis had a Cold Disagreeable night last in the Snow on a Cold point with one Small Blanket, the Buffalo crossed the river below in imence herds without braking in. only 2 buffalo killed to day one of which was too pore to Skin, The men which was frost bit is getting better. the [river] rise 1½ inch wind North.

11th December Tuesday 1804—

a verry Cold morning Wind from the north The Thermometer at 4 oClock A M. at 21. [sunrise at 21. see list] below 0 which is 53° below the freesing point and getting colder, the Sun Shows and reflects two imigies, the ice floating in the atmospear being So thick that the appearance is like a fog Despurceing.

Sent out three horses for meat & with Derections for all the hunters to return to the fort as Soon as possible at 1 oClock the horses returned loaded, at night all the hunters returned, Several a little *frosted*, The Black Cat Chief of the Mandans paid us a Visit to day, continue Cold all day river at a Stand.

12th December Wednesday 1804—

a Clear Cold morning Wind from the north the Thermometer at Sun rise Stood at 38° below 0., moderated untill 6 oClock at which time it began to get Colder. I line my Gloves and have a Cap made of the Skin of the *Louservia*² (Lynx) (or wild Cat of the North) the fur near 3 inches long, a Indian of the *Shoe*³ (*Maharha* or *Mocassin*) Nation Came with the half

¹ An experiment was made with proof spirits, which in fifteen minutes froze into hard ice. — GASS (p. 90).

² A corruption of the French *loup-cervier*, the common name of the Canada lynx (*Lynx canadensis*). — ED.

³ Merely an Anglicized form of the French appellation *Gens de Soulier*, applied to the Ahnahaway (see p. 208, note 2, ante). — ED.

of a *Cabra ko kâ* or Antelope which he killed near the Fort. Great numbers of those animals are near our fort (*so that they do not all return to rock mountain Goat*) but the weather is So Cold that we do not think it prudent to turn out to hunt in Such Cold weather, or at least untill our Const^l are prepared to under go this Climate. I measure the river from bank to bank on the ice and make it 500 yards

13th December Thursday 1804—

The last night was verry Clear & the frost which fell covered the ice old Snow & those parts which was naked $\frac{1}{6}$ of an inch, The Thermometer Stands this morning at 20. below 0, a fine day. find it imposible to make an Observation with an arteficial Horrison. Joseph Fields kill a Cow and Calf to day, one mile from the Fort. River fall.

14th December Friday 1804—

a fine Morning. wind from the S. E. the Murckerey Stood at 0 this morning I went with a party of men down the river 18 miles¹ to hunt Buffalow, Saw two Bulls too pore to kill, the Cows and large gangues haveing left the River, we only killed two Deer & Camped all night with Some expectation of Seeing the Buffalow in the morning, a verry Cold night, Snowed.

15th of December 1804 Satturday —

a Cold Clear morning, Saw no buffalow, I concluded to return to the fort & hunt on each Side of the river on our return which we did without Success. the Snow fell $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches deep last night. Wind North. on my return to the fort found Several Chiefs there.

16th December Sunday 1804 —

a clear Cold morning, the Thermt^l at Sun rise Stood at 22. below 0, a verry singlar appearance of the Moon last night, as She appeared thro: the frosty atmispear. Mr. Henny from the Establishment on River Ossinniboin, with a letter from,

¹ "On the ice with Slays," according to a memorandum on p. 220 of this Codex. — Ed.

M^r: Charles Chabouillez one of the C^o arrived in 6 Days,¹ Mr. C. in his letter expressed a great anxiety to Serve us in any thing in his power.²

* a root Discribed by M^r: Henny for the Cure of a Mad Dog [blank in MS. —Ed.]

M^r: LeRock a clerk, of the NW. Company and M^r: George Bunch a Clerk of the Hudsons beey Compy accompanied M^r: Henry from the village.

17th December Monday 1804—

a verry Cold morning the Thmt. Stood a[t] 45 below 0. We found Mr. Henny a Verry intelligent Man from whom we obtained Some Scetches of the Countrey between the Mississippⁱ & Missouri, and Some Sketches from him, which he had obtained from the Indin^s to the *West* of this place also the names and charectors of the Seeaux &c. about 8 oClock P M. the thermometer fell to 74° below the freeing point. the Indian Chiefs Sent word that Buffalow was in our Neighbourhood, and if we would join them, in the morning they would go and kill them.

18th December Tuesday 1804—

The Themometer the Same as last night M^{rs}: Haney & La Roche left us for the Grossventre Camp, Sent out 7 men to hunt for the Buffalow they found the weather too cold & returned, Several Indians Came, who had Set out with a View to Kill buffalow, The river rise a little I imploy my Self makeing a Small Map of Connexion &c. Sent Jessomme to the Main Chief of the mandans to know the Cause of his

¹ This post, according to Coues (*Henry's Journal*, i, p. 298) was called Fort Montagne à la Bosse, situated on the Assiniboin about 50 miles above Mouse River. The messenger's name appears in the L. and C. MSS. as Henny, Henry and Haney. His real name was Hugh Henney, a trader for the Hudson's Bay Company. Larocque mentions his arrival (*Masson's Bourg. Nord-Ouest*, i, p. 307). Mrs. E. E. Dye cites to the Editor from a MS. journal of a Hudson's Bay Company trader (1812-16) the additional fact that he was head of the Pembina and Red River (of the North) district as late as 1812, when he was superseded by Peter Fidler, with whose earlier exploration Lewis and Clark were acquainted. — Ed.

² The object of the visits we received from the N. W. Company, was to ascertain our motives for visiting that country, and to gain information with respect to the change of government. — GASS (p. 92).

24th December Monday 1804

Several Chiefs and Members of Men Women and Children at the fort to day, some for trade, the most as lookers on, we gave 100 fathoms of Sheep Skin (which we bought for Spunging) to 3 Chiefs one to each of 2 inches wide, which they lay great value (praising) those fathoms equal to a fine horse, a fine day we finished the fortification around our works

25th December Christmas Tuesday

I was awakened before day by a discharge of 2 platoons from the Forts and the French, the men merrily disposed, I gave them all a little Rappin and permitted 3 Cannon fired, ^{at} early day, some men went out to hunt & the others to dance and continued until 9 o'clock P.M. when the French came in.

detaining or taking a horse of *Chabonoe* our big belly interpreter, which we found was thro: the rascallity of one Lafrance a trader from the NW. Company, who told this Chief that Chabonat ow^d him a horse to go and take him he done So agreeable to an indian Custom. he gave up the horse

19th December Wednesday 1804—

The Wind from the S.W. the weather moderated a little, I engage my Self in Connecting the countrey from information. river rise a little¹

20th December Thursday 1804—

The wind from the NW a moderate day, the Thermometer 37. (24) above 0, which gives an opportunity of putting up our pickets next the river, nothing remarkable took place to Day river fall a little

21st December Friday 1804—

a fine Day warm and wind from the NW by W, the Indian whome I stoped from Committed Murder on his wife, thro jelloxy of one of our interpreters, Came & brought his two wives and Shewed great anxiety to make up with the man with whome his joulussey Sprung. a Womon brought a Child with an abcess on the lower part of the back, and offered as much Corn as she Could Carry for some Medison, Cap^t Lewis administered &c.

22nd December Saturday 1804—

worm. a number of Squars & men Dressed in Squars Clothes² Came with Corn to Sell to the men for little things, We precured two horns of the animale the french Call the

¹ Biddle here describes a game played by the Mandan with flat rings and sticks on a level surface. — ED.

² Reference is here made to a singular class of men who have been found by travellers and explorers among most of the Southern and Western tribes; they are commonly called "berdashes" (a corruption of Fr. *berdache*). They assumed feminine garb and occupations, for the entire span of life, and were regarded with the utmost contempt by their tribesmen. For accounts of this strange custom, see Lafitau's *Mœurs des sauvages*, i, pp. 52, 53; Long's Expedition, i, p. 129; Carr's *Mounds of Miss. Valley*, p. 33; Catlin's *N. Amer. Indians*, ii, pp. 214, 215; Henry's *Journal*, i, pp. 53, 163-165; and *Jes. Relations*, lix, p. 129. — ED.

rock Mountain Sheep those horns are not of the largest kind The Mandans Indians Call this Sheep *Ar-Sar-ta* it is about the Size of a large Deer, or Small Elk, its Horns Come out and wind around the head like the horn of a Ram and the tecture (*texture*) not unlike it much larger and thicker, particularly that part with which they but[t] or outer part which is [blank in MS.] inches thick, the length of those horns, which we have is [blank in MS.]

23rd December Sunday 1804—

a fine Day great numbers of indians of all discriptions Came to the fort many of them bringing Corn to trade, the *little Crow*, load^d his wife & Sun with Corn for us, Cap. Lewis gave him a few presents as also his wife, She made a kittle of boiled Cimmins, beans, Corn & Choke Cheries with the Stones, which was palitable This Desh is Considered, as a treat among those people, the Chiefs of the Mandans are fond of stayin' & Sleeping in the fort

24th December Monday 1804—

Several Chiefs and numbers of Men Womin and Children at the fort to Day, Some for trade, the most as lookers on, we gave a fellet of Sheep Skin (which we brought for Spunging) to 3 Chiefs one to each of 2 inches wide, [on] which they lay Great value (priseing those felets equal to a fine horse), a fine Day we finished the pickengen (*picketing*) around our works.

25th December Christmass Tuesday—

I was awakened before Day by a discharge of 3 platoons from the Party and the french, the men merrily Disposed, I give them all a little Taffia and permitted 3 Cannon fired, at raising Our flag, Some Men Went out to hunt & the others to Dancing and Continued untill 9 oClock P.M. when the frolick ended &c.¹

¹ Biddle says: "We had told the Indians not to visit us, as it was one of our great medicine days." Gass says: "Flour, dried apples, pepper, and other articles were distributed in the different messes to enable them to celebrate Christmas in a proper and social manner." Three rations of brandy were served during the day, which was mainly spent in dancing; no women were present save Charboneau's three wives, who were only spectators. — Ed.

26th Dec. Wednesday 1804—

a temperate day no Indians to day or yesterday. A man from the NW. Company Came Down from the Gross Ventres to get one of our interpeters to assist them in trade This man informed that the Party of Gross Ventres who persued the Assiniboins that Stold their horses, had all returned in their usual way by Small parties, the last of the party bringing 8 horses which they Stole from a Camp of Assiniboins which they found on Mouse River.

27th December 1804 Thursday—

a little fine Snow weather Something Colder than yesterday Several Indians here to Day, much Suprised at the Bellos (*Bellovs*)¹ & method of making Sundery articles of Iron Wind hard from the NW.²

¹ Which they considered as a very great medicine. — BIDDLE (*L. and C.*, i, p. 145).

² Here follows, in Biddle, a sketch of the Siouan tribes, mainly the same information which we have thus far obtained from the MS. text. — ED.

CHAPTER VI

AMONG THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 2, 1805; February 13—March 21, 1805
 Entries by Lewis, February 3-13 and March 16

[Clark:]

28th of December Friday 1804 —

BLEW very hard last night, the frost fell like a Shower of Snow, nothing remarkable to day, the Snow Drifting from one bottom to another and from the leavel plains into the hollows &c.

29th December Saturday 1804 —

The frost fell last night nearly a $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch Deep and Continud to fall untill the Sun was of Some hite, the Mercury Stood this Morning at 9° below 0 which is not considered Cold, as the Changes take place gradually without long intermissions a number of Indians here

30th December Sunday 1804 —

Cold the Term^t at 20° below 0 a number of Indians here to day they are much Supprised at the Bellows one Deer Killed

31st of December Monday 1804 Fort Mandan —

a fine Day Some wind last night which Mixed the Snow and Sand in the bead of the river, which has the appearance of hillocks of Sand on the ice, which is also Covered with Sand & Snow, the frost which falls in the night, Continues on the earth & old Snow &c. &c. a number of indians here every Day our blakSmith Mending their axes hoes &c. &c. for which the Squars bring Corn for payment.¹

¹ Biddle here adds: "In their general conduct during these visits they are honest, but will occasionally pilfer any small article." Mackenzie says (Masson's *Bourg.*

*Fort Mandan on the NE bank of the Missouri 1600 Miles up. Tuesday
January the 1st 1805. —*

The Day was ushered in by the Discharge of two Cannon, we Suffered 16 men with their Musick to visit the 1st Village for the purpose of Dancing, by as they Said the perticular request of the Chiefs of that Village, about 11 oClock I with an inturpeter & two men walked up to the Village, (my views were to alay Some little Miss understanding which had taken place thro jelloucy and mortification as to our treatment towards them I found them much pleased at the Dancing of our men,¹ I ordered my black Servent to Dance which amused the Croud Verry much, and Somewhat astonished them, that So large a man should be active &c. &c. I went into the lodges of all the men of note. except two, whome I heard had made Some expressions not favourable towards us, in Compareing us with the traders from the north,—those Chiefs observed (*to us that*) what they Sayed was in just (*in jest*) & laftur. just as I was about to return, the 2^d Chief a(*nd*) the Black man, also a Chief return^d from a Mission on which they had been Sent to meet a large party (150) of *Gross Ventres*² who were on their way down from their Camps 10 Miles above to revenge on the *Shoe* tribe an injury which they had received by a Shoe man Steeling a *Gross Ventres Girl*, those Chiefs gave the pipe [and] turned the party back, after Delivering up the Girl, which the Shoe Chief had taken and given to them for that purpose.” I returned in the evening,

Nord-Ouest, i, p. 330), of the Indian opinion regarding Lewis and Clark: “The Indians admired the air gun, as it could discharge forty shots out of one load, but they dreaded the magic of the owners. ‘Had I these white warriors in the upper plains,’ said the *Gros Ventres* chief, ‘my young men on horseback would soon do for them, as they would do for so many wolves, for,’ continued he, ‘there are only two sensible men among them, the worker of iron and the mender of guns.’” — ED.

¹ “Particularly with the movements of one of the Frenchmen who danced on his head” (Biddle). Coues here asserts (i, p. 219) that Clark explained to Biddle that the Frenchman danced on his hands, head downward. — ED.

² Biddle here adds “or wandering Minnetarees,” an epithet often used by Lewis and Clark to designate an Arapaho band, who are still known as “Gros Ventres of the Prairie,” in distinction from the “Gros Ventres of the Missouri,” the term commonly applied to the Minitaree (now settled at Fort Berthold, N. D.). See p. 225, *note, ante*. — ED.

at night the party except 6 returned, with 3 robes, an[d] 13 Strings of Corn which the indians had given them, The Day was worm, Thermt' 34° above 0, Some few Drops of rain about Sunset, at Dark it began to Snow, and Snowed the greater part of the night, (the temp^r for Snow is about 0) The Black Cat with his family visited us to day and brought a little meet

2nd of January Wednesday 1805 —

a Snowey morning, a party of Men go to Dance at the 2nd Village to Dance, Cap^t Lewis & the interpt^r Visit the 2^d Village, and return in the evening, Some Snow to Day Verry cold in the evening¹

3rd of January Thursday 1805 —

Some Snow to day, 8 men go to hunt the buffalow, killed a hare & wolf Several Indians visit us to day & a Gross Ventre came after his wife, who had been much abused, & came here for Protection.

4th of January Friday 1805 Fort Mandan —

a worm Snowey Morning, the Thermt^r at 28° above 0, Cloudy, Sent out 3 Men to hunt down the river, Several Indians Came to day, the little Crow, who has proved friendly Came, we gave him a handkerchf & 2 files, in the evening the weather became cold and windey, wind from the NW. I am Verry unwell the after part of the Daye

5th of January Saturday 1805 —

a cold day Some Snow, Several Indians visit us with their axes to get them mended, I employ my Self Drawing a Connection of the Countrey² from what information I have re-

¹ This day I discovered how the Indians keep their horses during the winter. In the day-time they are permitted to run out and gather what they can; and at night are brought into the lodges, with the natives themselves, and fed upon cottonwood branches; and in this way are kept in tolerable case.—GASS (p. 96).

² This map was sent to President Jefferson, April 7, 1805, and preserved in the archives of the War Department. As drafted by Nicholas King, 1806, it is cited herein as "Lewis's map of 1806."—COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 221).

An atlas volume contains this and others of Clark's maps.



NOÁPEH / An. Seminole Indian!

c[*e*]ved. a Buffalo Dance (or Medeson) (*Medecine*) for 3 nights passed in the 1st Village, a curious Custom the old men arrange themselves in a circle & after Smoke[ing] a pipe which is handed them by a young man, Dress[ed] up for the purpose, the young men who have their wives back of the Circle go [each] to one of the old men with a whining tone and request the old man to take his wife (who presents [herself] necked except a robe) and—(or Sleep with her) the Girl then takes the Old Man (who very often can scarcely walk) and leads him to a convenient place for the business, after which they return to the lodge; if the old man (or a white man) returns to the lodge without gratifying the Man & his wife, he offers her again and again; it is often the Case that after the 2^d time without Kissing the Husband throws a new robe over the old man &c. and begs him not to dispise him & his wife (We Sent a man to this Medisan Dance last night, they gave him 4 Girls) all this is to cause the buffalo to Come near So that they may Kill them¹

6th of January Sunday 1805—

a Cold day but few indians to day I am ingaved [engaged] as yesterday

7th of January Monday 1805—

a verry cold Clear Day. The Themt^r Stood at 2^d below 0 Wind NW., the river fell 1 inch Several indians returned from hunting, one of them the Big White Chief of the Lower Mandan Village, Dined with us, and gave me a Scetch of the Country as far as the high Mountains, & on the South Side of the River Rejone,² he Says that the river rejone recvees (*receives*) 6 Small rivers on the S. Side, & that the Country is verry hilley and the greater part Covered with timber Great numbers of *beaver* &c. the 3 men returned from hunting, they kill^d, 4 Deer & 2 Wolves, Saw Buffalo a long ways off. I continue to Draw a connected plott from the

¹ This ceremony is described much more fully by Biddle (i, pp. 150, 151), and by Prince Maximilian (*Voyage*, ii, pp. 453, 454, and iii, pp. 56-60). — ED.

² An imperfect phonetic rendering of the French name Roche-Jaune, meaning "Yellowstone," still applied to the river here described. — ED.

information of Traders, Indians & my own observation & ideas. from the best information, the Great falls is about (800) miles nearly West,¹

8th of January Tuesday 1805 —

a cold Day but few indians at the fort to day wind from the N.W. one man at the Village²

9th of January Wednesday 1805

a Cold Day Thermometer at 21° below 0, great numbers of indians go to kill Cows,³ (C. Clark acc^t them with 3 or 4 men killed a number of cows near the fort.) the little Crow Brackf! with us, Several Indians Call at the Fort nearly frozed, one man reported that he had Sent his Son a Small boy to the fort about 3 oClock, & was much distressed at not finding him here, the after part of this day very Cold, and wind keen

10th of January Thursday 1805

last night was excessively Cold the Murkery this morning Stood at 40° below 0 which is 72° below the freeing point, we had one man out last night, who returned about 8 oClock this morning. The Indians of the lower Villege turned out to hunt for a man & a boy who had not returnd from the hunt of yesterday, and borrow'd a Slay to bring them in expecting to find them frozed to death⁴ about 10 oClock the boy about

¹ Larocque says (Masson's *Bourgeois*, pp. 310, 311) that Lewis and Clark found all the longitudes estimated by David Thompson to be inaccurate. He gives interesting details as to the territorial claims of the United States, saying: "They include in their territory as far north as River *Qui appelle*, for, as it was impossible for a line drawn west from the west end of *Lac des Bois* to strike the Mississippi, they make it run till it strikes its tributary waters, that is, the north branches of the Missouri and from thence to the Pacific." — ED.

² Biddle here describes another licentious ceremony, called "the medicine-dance." — ED.

³ The buffaloes were usually called by the French hunters "wild cows" or "wild cattle," a term often adopted by the English. — ED.

⁴ In Biddle's account are found some additional details, especially interesting as showing a humane and generous nature in these Indians: "The boy had been a prisoner and adopted from charity, yet the distress of the father proved that he felt for him the tenderest affection. The man was a person of no distinction, yet the whole village was full of anxiety for his safety." — ED.

13 years of age Came to the fort with his feet frozed and had layed out last night without fire with only a Buffalow Robe to Cover him, the Dress which he wore was a pr. of Cabra (*antelope*) Legins, which is verry thin and mockersons we had his feet put in cold water and they are Comeing too. Soon after the arrival of the Boy, a Man Came in who had also Stayed out without fire, and verry thinly Clothed, this man was not the least injured. Customs & the habits of those people has anured [them] to bare more Cold than I thought it possible for man to endure. Sent out 3 men to hunt Elk below about 7 miles

11th January Friday 1805

Verry Cold, Send out 3 men to join 3 now below & hunt, *Pose-cop se ha* or Black Cat. came to See us and Stay all night

Sho ta har ro ra or Coal also stay^d all night, the inturpiter oldst wife Sick, Some of our Men go to See a War Medeson made at the Village on the opposit Side of the river, this is a [blank in MS.]

12th of January Saturday 1805

a verry Cold Day three of our hunters J & R *Fields* withe 2 Elk on a Slay Sent one more hunter out.

13th of January Sunday 1805

a Cold Clear Day (great number of Indians move Down the River to hunt) those people Kill a Number of Buffalow near their Villages and Save a great perpotion of the Meat, their Custom of making this article of life General (*see note*) (*common*) leaves them more than half of their time without meat¹ Their Corn & Beans &c they keep for the Summer, and as a reserve in Case of an attack from the Soues, [of] which they are always in dread, and Sildom go far to hunt except in large parties, about $\frac{1}{2}$ the Mandans nation passed this to day to hunt on

¹ Referring to the custom of dividing their game equally among all the families of the tribe, whether or not these have sent out men to the hunt, and to their improvidence and carelessness (*see Biddle, i, pp. 153, 159*). — Ed.

the river below, they will Stay out some Days, M^r Chabonee (our inturpeter) and one man that accompanied him to Some loges of the Menatarrees near the Turtle Hill¹ returned, both frozed in their faces. Chaboneu informs that the Clerk of the Hudson Bay Co. with the *Me ne tar res* has been Speaking Some few express^{ns} unfavourable towards us, and that it is Said the NW Co: intends building a fort at the *Mene tar rés*. he Saw the grand Chief of the *Big bellies* who Spoke Slightly of the Americans, Saying if we would give our great flag to him he would Come to See us.

14th of January 1805 Monday

This morning early a number of indians men women children Dogs &c. &c. passed down on the ice to joine those that passed yesterday, we Sent Serg^t Pryor and five men with those indians to hunt (Several men with the Veneraal cougth from the Mandan women) one of our hunters Sent out Several days [ago] arived & informs that one Man (Whitehouse) is frost bit and Can't walk home.

15th January Tuesday 1805 Fort Mandan

between 12 & 3 oClock this Morning we had a total eclips of the Moon, a part of the observations necessary for our purpose in this eclips we got which is

at 12 h-57 m-54 s	Total Darkness of the Moon
at -1 -44 -00	End of total Darkness of The moon
at 2 -39 -10	End of the eclips.

This morning not so Cold as yesterday Wind from the S.E. wind chopod around to the N.W. Still temperate four Considerate [considerable — ED.] men of the Menetarre Came to See us We Smoked in the pipe, many Mand^t present also, we Showed (*attentions*) to those men who had been impressed with an unfavourable oppinion of us (*which satisfied them*).

¹ On the Little Missouri River. — ED.

16th January Wednesday 1805

about thirty Mandans came to the fort to day, 6 chiefs. those Me-ne-ta-rees told them they were liars, had told them if they Came to the fort the whites men would kill them, they had been with them all night, Smoked in the pipe and have been treated well and the whites had danced for them, observing the Mandans were bad and ought to hide themselves. one of the 1st War Chiefs of the big bell[j]es nation Came to see us to day with one man and his Squar to wate on him (*requested that she might be used for the night*) (*his wife handsome*) We Shot the Air gun, and gave two Shots with the Cannon which pleased them verry much, the little Crow 2^d Chf of the lower Village Came & brought us Corn &c. 4 men of ours who had been hunting returned one frost'd

This War Chief gave us a Chart in his Way of the Missourie, he informed us of his intentions of going to War in the Spring against the Snake Indians we advised him to look back at the number of Nations who had been distroyed by War, and reflect upon what he was about to do, observing if he wished the happiness of his nation, he would be at peace with all, by that by being at peace and haveing plenty of goods amongst them & a free intercourse with those defenceless nations, they would get on easy tirms a greater Number of horses, and that Nation would increas, if he went to War against those Defenceless people, he would displeas his great father, and he would not receive that pertection & care from him as other nations who listened to his word. This Chief who is a young man 26 y^r old replied that if his going to war against the Snake indians would be displeasing to us he would not go, he had horses enough.

We observed that what we had said was the words of his great father, and what we had Spoken to all the Nations which we Saw on our passage up, they all promis to open their *ears*, and we do not know as yet if any of them has Shut them (we are doubtfull of the Soues) if they do not attend to what we have told them their great father will open their ears. This Chief Said that he would advise all his nation to stay at home untill we Saw the Snake Indians & Knew if they would be friendly, he himself would attend to what we had told him.

17th January Thursday 1805

a verry Windey morning hard from the North Thermomiter at 0, Several Indians here to day

18th January Friday 1805

a fine worm morning, M^r La Rock a[nd] M^r Kinzey Came down to See us with them Several of the Grosse Ventres.

19th January Saturday 1805.

a fine Day Mess^{rs} Le rock & M^r Kinzey returned home, Sent three horses down to our hunting Camp for the meet they had killed, Jussomes Squar, left him and went to the Village

20th —

a Cold fair day Several Indians at the fort to day a Missunderstanding took place between the two inturpeters on account of their squars, one of the Squars of Shabowner Squars being Sick, I ordered my Servent to give her some froot Stewed and tee at dif^t times which was the cause of the missundst¹

21st Monday January 1805

a number of Indians here to day a fine day nothing remarkable one ban [man] verry bad with the pox.

22nd January 1805 Tuesday

a find warm Day attempted to Cut the Boat & perogues out of the Ice, found water at about 8 inches under the 1st Ice, the next thickness about 3 feet

23rd January 1805 Wednesday

A Cold Day Snow fell 4 Inches deep, the accurancies (*accurrencies*) of this day is as is common

¹ I went up with one of the men to the villages. They treated us friendly and gave us victuals. After we were done eating they presented a bowful to a buffaloe head, saying, "eat that." Their superstitious credulity is so great, that they believe by using the head well, the living buffaloe will come, and that they will get a supply of meat. — GASS (pp. 98, 99).

24th January Thursday 1805

a fine day, our inturpeters appear to understand each other better than a few days past. Sent out Several hunters, they returned without killing any thing, Cut Coal wood.¹

25th of January 1805 Friday

we are informed of the arrival of a Band of assniboins at the Villages with the Grand Chief of those Tribes Call[ed] the (Fée de petite veau) (*Fils de Petit veau*) to trade, one of our interpersers & one man Set out to the Big Belley Camp opposit the Island, men employ'd in Cutting the Boat out of the ice, and Collecting Coal wood.

26th of January Satturday 1805

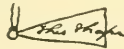
a verry fine worm Day Several Indians Dine with us and are much Pleased. one man taken violently Bad with the Plurisie, Bleed & apply those remedies Common to that disorder.

27th of January Sunday 1805

a fine day, attempt to Cut our Boat and Canoos out of the Ice, a deficiuelt Task I fear as we find water between the Ice, I bleed the man with the Plurisy to day & Swet him, Cap! Lewis took off the Toes of one foot of the Boy who got frost bit Some time ago, Shabonoe our interperser returned, & informed that the Assiniboins had returned to their Camps, & brought 3 horses of M! Larock's to Stay here for fear of their being Stolen by the Assiniboins who are great rogues.² cut off the boy[']s] toes.

28th January Monday 1805

attempt to Cut through the ice to get our Boat and Canoo out without Suckcess, Several Indians here wishing to get War hatchets Made the man Sick yesterday is getting well M! Jessome our interperser was taken verry unwell this evening worm day



¹ Wood to make charcoal. — BIDDLE (I, p. 156).

² Laroque says that he sent his horses to the fort in accordance with Captain Clark's offer to care for them with his own animals. — ED.

29th January Tuesday 1805

Gave Jassome a Dost of Salts We Send & Collect Stones and put them on a large log heap to heat them with a view of worming water in the Boat and by that means, Seperate her from the Ice, our attempt appears to be defeated by the Stones all breaking & flying to peaces in the fire, a fine worm Day, we are now burning a large Coal pit, to mend the indians hatchets, & make them war axes, the only means by which we precure Corn from them.

30th January Wednesday 1805

a fine morning. clouded up at 9 oClock, M^r La Roche paid us a Visit, & we gave him an answer respecting the request he made when last here of accompanying us on our Journey &c. (*refused*)

31st January Thursday 1805

Snowed last night, wind high from the NW. Sawed off the boys toes Sent 5 men down the river to hunt with 2 horses, our interpetter something better, George Drewyer taken with the Pleurisy last evening Bled & gave him Some Sage tea, this morning he is much better. Cold disagreeable Day

1st of February Friday 1805

a cold windey Day our hunters return^d having killed only one Deer, a War Chief of the *Me ne tar ras* came with some Corn requested to have a War hatchet made, & requested to be allowed to go to War against the Soues & Recarres who had Killed a *mandan* Some time past. We refused, and gave reasons, which he verry readily assented to, and promised to open his ears to all We Said this Man is young and named (*Seeing Snake*)-*Mar-book*, *She-ah-O-ke-ah*. this mans Woman Set out & he prosued her, in the evening

2nd of February Saturday 1805

a fine Day, one Deer killed our interpetter Still unwell, one of the wives of the Big belley interpet^r Sick. M^r *Larocke* leave us to day (this man is a Clerk to the NW. Company, & verry anxious to accompany us)

[Lewis:]

3^d of February Sunday 1805.¹

a fine day; the blacksmith again commences his operations. we were visited by but few of the natives today. the situation of our boat and perogues is now alarming, they are firmly inclosed in the Ice and almost covered with snow — the ice which incloses them lyes in several stratas of unequal thicknesses which are seperated by streams of water. this [is] peculiarly unfortunate because so soon as we cut through the first strata of ice the water rushes up and rises as high as the upper surface of the ice and thus creates such a debth of water as renders it impracticable to cut away the lower strata which appears firmly attached to, and confining the bottom of the vessels. the instruments we have hitherto used has been the ax only, with which, we have made several attempts that proved unsuccessfull from the cause above mentioned. we then determined to attempt freeing them from the ice by means of boiling water which we purposed heating in the vessels by means of hot stones, but this expedient proved also fruitless, as every species of stone which we could procure in the neighbourhood partook so much of the calcareous genus that they burst into small particles on being exposed to the heat of the fire. we now determined as the dernier resort to prepare a parsel of Iron spikes and attatch them to the end of small poles of convenient length and endeavour by means of them to free the vessels from the ice. we have already prepared a large rope of Elk-skin and a windless by means of which we have no doubt of being able to draw the boat on the bank provided we can free [it] from the ice.

4th February, Monday 1805

This morning fair tho' could the thermometer stood at 18° below Naught, wind from N W. Capt Clark set out with a hunting party consisting of sixteen of our command

¹ From this point to the 13th of February, the journal is written by Lewis, during Clark's absence on a hunting expedition (Feb. 4-12). This is the only hiatus in Clark's regular journalizing, throughout the entire expedition; but under date of February 13th, pp. 259-261, *post*, after his return, he gives a brief summary of the events of each day during his trip, so that his record is practically complete. — Ed.

and two frenchmen who together with two others, have established a small hut and resided this winter within the vicinity of Fort Mandane under our protection. visited by many of the natives today. our stock of meat which we had procured in the Months of November & December is now nearly exhausted; a supply of this articles is at this moment peculiarly interesting as well for our immediate consumption, as that we may have time before the approach of the warm season to prepare the meat for our voyage in the spring of the year. Capt. Clark therefore determined to continue his rout down the river even as far as the River bullet¹ unless he should find a plenty of game nearer. the men transported their baggage on a couple of small wooden Slays drawn by themselves, and took with them 3 pack horses which we had agreed should be returned with a load of meat to fort mandane as soon as they could procure it. no buffaloe have made their appearance in our neighbourhood for some weeks (*time shorter*); and I am informed that our Indian neighbours suffer extreemly at this moment for the article of *flesh*. Shields killed two deer this evening, both very lean — one a large buck, he had shed his horns.

5th February Tuesday 1805. —

Pleasant morning wind from N.W. fair; visited by many of the natives who brought a considerable quantity of corn in payment for the work which the blacksmith had done for them they are pecu[li]arly attached to a *battle ax* formed in a very inconvenient manner in my opinion. it is fabricated of iron only, the blade is extreemly thin, from 7 to nine inches in length and from $4\frac{3}{4}$, to 6 Inches on it's edge, from whence the sides proceed nearly in a straight line to the eye where it's width is generally not more than an inch. the eye is round & about one inch in diameter, the handle seldom more than fourteen inches in length, the whole weighing about one pound the great length of the blade of this ax, added to the small size of the handle renders a stroke uncertain and

¹ The Cannon-ball River, which empties into the Missouri near Fort Rice, N. D. The expedition had reached the mouth of this stream on Oct. 18. — Ed.

easily avoided, while the shortness of the handel must render a blow much less forceable if even well directed, and still more inconvenient as they uniformly use this instrument in action on horseback. The oalder fassion is still more inconvenient, it is somewhat in the form of the blade of an Espantoon¹ but is attatch^d to a helve of the dementions before discribed the blade is sometimes by way of ornament purforated with two three or more small circular holes the following is the general figure it is from 12 to 15 inces in length



6th February Wednesday 1805.

Fair morning Wind from N.W. had a sley prepared against the return of the horses which Capt Clark had promised to send back as soon as he should be able to procure a load of meat. visited by many of the natives among others the Big white, the Coal, big-man, hairy horn and the black man, I smoked with them, after which they retired, a deportment not common, for they usually pester us with their good company the ballance of the day after once being introduced to our apartment. Shields killed three antelopes this evening. the blacksmiths take a considerable quantity of corn today in payment for their labour. the blacksmith's have proved a happy reso[r]ce to us in our present situation as I believe it would have been difficult to have devised any other method to have procured corn from the natives. the Indians are extravegantly fond of sheet iron of which they form arrow-points and manufacture into instruments for scraping and dressing their buffaloe robes. I permitted the blacksmith to dispose of a part of a sheet iron callaboos (*camboose*,² stove) which had been nearly birnt out on our passage up the river, and for each piece about four inches square he obtained from seven to eight gallons of corn from the natives who appeared extreemly pleased with the exchange

¹ A rare and practically obsolete form of *spontoon*, a word itself now little used. The implemen meant is the half-pike, a sort of halberd formerly used by certain officers of the British army. — COVES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 230).

² This is an unusual form of *caboose*, from the Dutch mariners' name of the cook's galley. — ED.

7th February Thursday 1805.

This morning was fair Thermometer at 18^o above naught much warmer than it has been for some days; wind S.E. continue to be visited by the natives. The Serg^t of the guard reported that the Indian women (wives to our interpreters) were in the habit of unbaring the fort gate at any time of night and admitting their Indian visitors, I therefore directed a lock to be put to the gate and ordered that no Indian but those attached to the garrison should be permitted to remain all night within the fort or admitted during the period which the gate had been previously ordered to be kept shut, which was from sunset until sunrise.

8th February Friday 1805.

This morning was fair wind S.E. the weather still warm and pleasant. visited by the *black-Cat* the principal chief of the Roop-tar-he, or upper mandane village. this man possesses more integrity, firmness, intelligence and perspicuity of mind than any indian I have met with in this quarter, and I think with a little management he may be made a usefull agent in furthering the views of our government. The black Cat presented me with a bow and apologized for not having completed the shield he had promised alledging that the weather had been too could to permit his making it, I gave him som small shot 6 fishing-hooks and 2 yards of ribbon his squaw also presented me with 2 pair of mockersons for which in return I gave a small lookingglass and a couple of nedles. the chief dined with me and left me in the evening. he informed me that his people suffered very much for the article of meat, and that he had not himself tasted any for several days.

9th February Saturday 1805.

The morning fair and pleasant, wind from S.E. visited by M^r M^cKinzey one of the N.W. Company's clerks. this evening a man by the name of Howard whom I had given permission to go [to] the Mandane vilage returned after the gate was shut and reather than call to the guard to have it opened scaled the works an indian who was looking on shortly after

followed his example. I convinced the Indian of the impropriety of his conduct, and explained to him the risk he had run of being severely treated, the fellow appeared much alarmed, I gave him a small piece of tobacco and sent him away. Howard I had committed to the care of the guard with a determination to have him tried by a Court-martial for this offence. This man is an old soldier which still heightens this offence.

10th February Sunday 1805.

This Morning was Cloudy after a slight Snow which fell in the course of the night the wind blue very hard from N.W. altho' the thermometer stood at 18. above naught the violence of the wind caused a degree of cold that was much more unpleasant than that of yesterday when thermometer stood at 10. only above the same point. M^r M^rKinzey left me this morning. Charbono returned with one of the Frenchmen, and informed me that he had left the three Horses and two men with the meat which Cap^t Clark had sent at some distance below on the river he told me that the horses were heavy loaded and that not being shod it was impossible for horses to travel on the ice. I determined to send down some men with two small sleds for the meat and accordingly I gave orders that they should set out early the next morning. two men were also sent to conduct the horses by way of the plain.

11th February Monday 1805.

The party that were ordered last evening set out early this morning, the weather was fair and cold wind N.W. about five O'clock this evening one of the wives of Charbono was delivered of a fine boy.¹ it is worthy of remark that this was the first child which this woman had boarn, and as is common in such cases her labour was tedious and the pain violent; M^r Jessome informed me that he had frequently administered a small portion of the rattle of the rattle-snake, which he

¹ This was Sacajawea, the Shoshone captive purchased by Charboneau, who had two other wives among the Mandan. Sacajawea was the only woman taken upon the Expedition.—ED.

assured me had never failed to produce the desired effect, that of hastening the birth of the child; having the rattle of a snake by me I gave it to him and he administered two rings of it to the woman broken in small pieces with the fingers and added to a small quantity of water. Whether this medicine was truly the cause or not I shall not undertake to determine, but I was informed that she had not taken it more than ten minutes before she brought forth perhaps this remedy may be worthy of future experiments, but I must confess that I want faith as to it's efficacy.

12th February Tuesday 1805.

The morning was fair tho' could, thermometer at 14 below naught wind S.E. ordered the Blacksmith to shoe the horses and some others to prepare some gears in order to send them down with three slays to join the hunting party and transport the meat which they may have procured to this place the men whom I had sent for the meat left by Charbono did not return untill 4 OClock this evening. Drewyer arrived with the horses about the same time, the horses appeared much fatieged I directed some meal brands [bran] given them moistened with a little water but to my astonishment found that they would not eat it but preferred the bark of the cotton wood which forms the principall article of food usually given them by their Indian masters in the winter season; for this purpose they cause the tree to be felled by their women and the horses feed on the boughs and bark of their tender branches. the Indians in our neighbourhood are frequently pilfered of their horses by the Recares, Souixs and Assiniboins and therefore make it an invariable rule to put their horses in their lodges at night. in this situation the only food of the horse consists of a few sticks of the cottonwood from the size of a man's finger to that of his arm. the Indians are invariably severe riders, and frequently have occasion for many days together through the whole course of the day to employ their horses in pursuing the Buffaloe or transporting meat to their vilages during which time they are seldom suffered to tast food; at night the Horse returned to his stall where his

food is what seems to me a scanty allowance of wood. under these circumstances it would seem that their horses could not long exist or at least could not retain their flesh and strength, but the contrary is the fact, this valuable animal under all those disadvantages is seldom seen meager or unfit for service. A little after dark this evening Cap^t Clark arrived with the hunting party since they set out they have killed forty Deer, three buffaloe bulls, & sixteen Elk, most of them were so meager that they were unfit for use, particularly the Buffaloe and male Elk the wolves also which are here extremely numerous helped themselves to a considerable proportion of the hunt. if an animal is killed and lyes only one night exposed to the wolves it is almost invariably devoured by them.

13th February Wednesday 1805.

The morning cloudy thermometer 2^d below naught wind from S.E. visited by the Black-Cat gave him a *battle ax* with which he appeared much gratified.

[Clark:]

I¹ returned last Night from a hunting party much fatigued, having walked 30 miles on the ice and through Points of wood land in which the Snow was nearly Knee Deep

The 1st day [Feb 4] I left the fort proceeded on the ice to *new Mandan* Island, 22 miles & camped, killed nothing, & nothing to eat,

The 2^d day — the morning verry Cold & Windey. I broke thro' the ice and got my feet and legs wet, Sent out 4 hunters thro' a point to kill a Deer & cook it by the time the party should get up, those hunters killed a Deer & 2 Buffaloe Bulls the Buffaloe too Meagur to eat, we ate the Deer & proceeded on to an old Indian Lodge, Sent out the hunters & they brought in three lean Deer, which we made use of for food, walking on uneven *ice* has blistered the bottoms of my feet, and walking is painfull to me.

¹ Clark here resumes the record, and the remainder of the journal in Codex C is (with the exception of one entry) in his handwriting. — ED.

3rd day — cold morning the after part of the Day worm, Camped on a Sand point near the mouth of a Creek on the SW. Side We Call hunting Creek, I turned out with the hunters I killed 2 Deer the hunters killed an Elk, Buffalow Bull, & 5 Deer. all Meager

4th Day — hunted the two bottoms near the Camp Killed 9 Elk, 18 Deer, brought to camp all the meat fit to eate, & had the bones taken out. every man ingaged either in hunting or Collecting & packing the meat to Camp

5th Day — Despatched one of the party our interperter & 2 french men with the 3 horses loaded with the best of the meat to the fort 44 miles Distant, the remaining meat I had packed on the 2 Slays & drawn down to the next point about 3 miles below, at this place I had all the meat collected which was killed yesterday & had escaped the Wolves, Ravin & Magpie; (which are verry noumerous about this place) and put into a close pen made of logs to secure it from the wolves & birds & proceeded on to a large bottom nearly opposit the Chisscheter (heart) River, in this bottom we found but little game, Great No. of Wolves, on the hills Saw Several parsels of Buffalow. Camped. I killed a Buck

6th Day — The Buffalow Seen last night provd to be Bulls. lean & unfit for to make use of as food, the Distance from Camp being nearly 60 miles and the packing of meat that distance attended with much dificuelty Deturmined me to return and hunt the points above, we Set out on our return and halted at an old Indian lodge 40 miles below Fort Mandan, Killed 3 Elk, & 2 Deer.

7th Day — a cold Day wind blew hard from the N.W. J. Fields got one of his ears frosted deturmined to lay by and hunt to day Killed an Elk & 6 deer, all that was fit for use [of] this meat I had Boned and put into a Close pen made of logs.

8th Day — the air keen halted at the old Camp we stayed in on the 2^d night after we left the Fort, expecting to meat the horses at this Place, killed 3 Deer, Several men being nearly out of Mockersons, & the horses not returning deturmined me to return to the Fort on tomorrow.



OFFERING OF THE MANDAN INDIANS

9th day. — Set out early, Saw great numbers of *Grouse* feeding on the young Willows, on the Sand bars, one man I sent in persute of a gangue of Elk Killed three near the old Ricara Village, and joined at the fort, Sent him back to secure the meat, one man with him. The ice on the Parts of the river which was verry rough, as I went down, was Smoothe on my return, This is owing to the rise and fall of the water, which takes place every day or two, and Caused by partial thaws, and obstructions in the passage of the water thro the Ice, which frequently attaches itself to the bottom, the water when rising forses its way thro the cracks & air holes above the old ice, & in one night becomes a Smothe Surface of ice 4 to 6 Inches thick, the River falls & the ice Sink in places with the water and attaches itself to the bottom, and when it again rises to its former hite, frequently leavs a Valley of Several feet to Supply with water to bring it on a leavel Surffice. The water of the Missouri at this time is Clear with little tingué.

I saw Several old Villages near the Chisscheter River on enquirey found they were Mandan Villages destroyed by the Sous & Small Pox, they [were] noumerous and lived in 6 (9) Villages near that place.

14th of February Thursday 1805.

The Snow fell 3 inches Deep last Night, a fine morning, Despatched George Drewyer & 3 men, with two Slays drawn by 3 horses for the Meat left below.

15th of February Friday 1805

at 10 oClock P M. last night the men that [were] despatched yesterday for the Meat, returned and informed us that as they were on their march down at the distance of about 24 miles below the Fort (G. Drewyer Frasure, S Gutterage, & Newmon¹ with a broken Gun). about 105 Indians which they took to be *Soues* rushed on them and cut their horses from the Slays, two of which they carried off in great hast, the 3rd horse was given up to the party by the intersetion of an Indian who assum^d

¹ These men were George Drouillard, Robert Frazier, Silas Goodrich, and John Newman. — Ed.

Some authority on the occasion, probably more thro fear of himself or Some of the Indians being killed by our men who were not disposed to be Robed of all they had tamely, they also forced 2 of the mens knives & a tamahawk, the man obliged them to return the tamahawk [, but] the knives they ran off with

We dispatched two men to inform the Mandans, and if any of them chose to pursue those robbers, to come down in the morning, and join Cap^l Lewis who intended to Set out with a party of men Verry early, by 12 oClock the Chief of the 2nd Village Big White came down, and Soon after one other Chief and Several men. The Chief observed that all the young men of the 2 Villages were out hunting, and but verry few guns were left, Cap^l Lewis Set out at Sunrise with 24 men, to meet those *Soues* &c. Several Indians accompanied him Some with Bows & arrows Some with Spears & Battle axes, 2 with fuzees (*fusils*).¹ the morning fine The Thermometer Stood at 16^o below 0, *Nought*, visited by 2 of the *Big Bellies* this evening, one Chief of the Mandans returned from Cap^l Lewis's Party nearly blind, this Complaint is as I am inform^d Common at this Season of the year and caused by the reflection of the Sun on the ice & Snow, it is cured by "jentilly sweetening the part affected, by throwing Snow on a hot Stone."

a Verry Cold part of the night one man Killed a verry large Red Fox to day.

16th of February Saturday 1805

a fine morning, visited by but few Indians to day, at Dusk two of the Indians who wint down with Cap^l Lewis returned, Soon after two others and one man (Howard) with his feet frosted, and informed that the Ind^l who Committed the robbery of the 2 horses was So far a head that they could not be overtaken, they left a number of pars of Mockersons which, the Mandans knew to be *Soues* Mockersons, This war party camped verry near the last Camp I made when on my hunting party, where they left Some Corn, as a deception, with a view to induce a belief that they were Ricarras.

¹ Flint-lock muskets. — Ed.

Cap^t Lewis & party proceeded on down the meat I left at my last Camp was taken.

17th of February Sunday 1805

this morning worm & a little Cloudy, the Coal & his Son visited me to day with a about 30^{lb} of dri[e]d Buffalow meat, & Some Tallow M^r M^r Kinsey one of the NW. Comp^y Clerks visited me (one of the ho[r]ses the Sous robed a few Days past. belonged to this man) The after part of the day fair.

18th of February Monday 1805

a cloudy morning Some Snow, Several Indians here to day M^r M^c Kinsey leave me, the after part of the day fine I am much engaged makeing a descriptive List of the Rivers from Information¹ our Store of Meat is out to day.

19th of February Tuesday 1805

a fine Day visited by Several of the Mandans to day, our Smiths are much engaged mending and makeing Axes for the Indians for which we get Corn

20th February Wednesday 1805

a Butifull Day, visited by the Little raven verry early this morning I am informed of the Death of an old man whome I saw in the Mandan Village this man, informed me that he "was 120 winters old, he requested his grand Children to Dress him after Death & Set him on a Stone on a hill with his face towards his old Village or Down the river, that he might go Streight to his brother at their old village under ground"² I observed Several Mandans verry old chiefly men³

¹ See "Scientific Data : Summary Statement of Rivers" — Clark's draft ; especially the information collected during winter of 1804-05 of streams above Fort Mandan flowing into the Missouri. — ED.

² Referring to the myth of their tribal origin, as having come from an underground region. For a minute account of this belief, written from the recital made by a prominent Mandan, see Prince Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 431-436. — ED.

³ Whose robust exercises fortify the body, while the laborious occupations of the women shorten their existence. — BIDDLE (i, p. 163).

21st February Thursday 1805

a Delightfull Day put out our Clothes to Sun. Visited by the big White & Big Man they informed me that Several men of their nation was gone to Consult their Medison Stone about 3 day march to the South West to know what was to be the result of the ensuing year. They have great confidence in this stone, and say that it informs them of every thing which is to happen, & visit it every Spring & Sometimes in the Summer. "They haveing arrived at the Stone give it smoke and proceed to the Wood at Some distance to Sleep the next morning return to the Stone, and find marks white & raised on the stone representing the peece or War which they are to meet with, and other changes, which they are to meet" This Stone has a leavel Surface of about 20 feet in Surcumfrance, thick and porus," and no doubt has Some mineral quallites effected by the Sun.¹

The Big Bellies have a Stone to which they ascribe nearly the Same Virtues

Cap^t Lewis returned with 2 Slays loaded with meat, after finding that he could not overtake the Soues War party, (who had in their way distroyed all the meat at one Deposit which I had made & Burnt the Lodges) deturmined to proceed on to the lower Deposit which he found had not been observed by the Soues he hunted two day Killed 36 Deer & 14 Elk, Several of them so meager, that they were unfit for use, the meet which he killed and that in the lower Deposit amounting to about 3000^{lb} was brought up on two Slays one Drawn by 16 men had about 2400^{lb} on it

22nd of February Friday 1805.

a Cloudy morning, about 12 oClock it began to rain, and Continud for a few minite, and turned to Snow, and Con-

¹ See descriptions of this "medicine stone," and of the ceremonies with which the Indians invoked the spirit supposed to dwell there, in Long's *Expedition*, i, pp. 273, 274; and Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 459, 460. Both the Mandan and Minitaree were accustomed to consult these oracles; Matthews says of the latter (*Ethnog. Hidatsa*, p. 51): "The Hidatsa now seldom refer to it, and I do not think they ever visit it." — Ed.

tinud Snowing for about one hour, and Cleared away fair
The two hunters left below arrived, they killed two Elk, and
hung them up out of reach of the Wolves. The Coal a
Ricara who is a considerable Chief of the Mandans Visited
us to day, and maney others of the three nations in our
neighbourhood.

23rd of February 1805 Saturday

All hands employed in Cutting the Perogues Loose from
the ice, which was nearly even with their top; we found great
dificuelty in effecting this work owing to the Different devi-
sions of Ice & water. after Cutting as much as we Could with
axes, we had all the Iron we Could get, & some axes put on
long poles and picked through the ice, under the first water,
which was not more the [than] 6 or 8 inches Deep, we dis-
engaged one Perogue, and nearly disengaged the 2nd in Course
of this day which has been worm & pleasent vis'ed by a No
of Indians, Jessomme & familey went to the *Shoe* Indians
Villag to day

The father of the Boy whose feet were frozed near this place,
and nearly Cured by us, took him home in a Slay.

24th February Sunday 1805

The Day fine, we Commenced very early to day the Cut-
ting loose the boat which was more difiuel than the Perogus
with great exertions and with the assistance of Great prizes we
lousened her, and turned the Second perogue upon the ice,
ready to Draw out, in lousening the boat from the ice Some
of the Corking drew out which Caused her to Leake for a few
minits untill we Discovered the Leake & Stoped it. Jessomme
our interpeter & familey returned from the Villages Several
Indians visit us to day

25th of February Monday 1805

We fixed a Windlass and Drew up the two Perogues on the
upper bank, and attempted the Boat, but the Roap, which we
hade made of Elk skins proved too weak & broke Several
times. night Comeing on obliged us to leave her in a Situation

but little advanced. We were visited by the Black mockerson Chief of the little Village of the Big Bellies, the Chief of the Shoe Ind^s and a number of others those Chiefs gave us Some meat which they packed on their wives, and one requested a ax to be made for his Sun, M^r (Root) Bunch, one of the under traders for the hudsons Bay Company. one of the Big Bellies asked leave for himself & his two wives to Stay all night, which was granted, also two Boys Stayed all night, one the Sun of the Black Cat.

The Day has been exceedingly pleasant

26th February Tuesday 1805

a fine Day Commenced verry early in makeing preparations for drawing up the Boat on the bank, at Sunset by Repeated exertions the whole day, we accomplished this troublesom task, just as we were fixed for hauling the Boat, the ice gave way near us for about 100 yd^s in length. a number of Indians here to day to See the Boat rise on the Bank.

27th of February Wednesday 1805

a find day, preparing the Tools to make perogues all day. a few Indians Visit us to day, one the largest Indian I ever Saw, & as large a man as ever I saw, I commence a Map of the Country on the Missouries & its water &c. &c. —

28th of February Thursday 1805

a fine morning two men of the NW Comp^y arrive with letters and Sackacomah,¹ also a Root and top of a plant, presented by M^r Haney, for the Cure of Mad Dogs Snakes &c. and to be found & used as follows viz: “this root is found on the high lands and ascent of hills, the way of using it is to scarify the part when bitten to chu or pound an inch or more if the root is Small, and applying it to the bitten part renewing it twice a

¹ Probably a corrupt form of *sacacommis*, a name applied to the bear-berry (*Arctostaphylos*), of which the Indians eat the berry, and often use the bark in preparing the smoking-mixture called *kinnikinick*. — ED.

Day. the bitten person is not to chew nor Swallow any of the Root for it might have contrary effect."¹

Sent out 16 men to make four Perogus those men returned in the evening and informed that they found trees they thought would answer.

M^r. Gravelin two frenchmen & two Ind^s arrive from the Ricara Nation with Letters from M^r. Anty Tabeaux, informing us of the peaceable dispositions of that nation towards the Mandans & Me ne ta rees & their avowed intentions of pursuing our councils & advice, they express a wish to visit the Mandans, & [to] know if it will be agreeable to them to admit the Recaras to Settle near them and join them against their Common Enemy the *Soues* We mentioned this to the mandans, who observed they had always wished to be at peace and good neighbours with the *Ricaras*, and it is also the Sentiments of all the Big bellies, & Shoe nations

Mr. Gravelin informs that the *Sisetoons* and the 3 upper bands of the *Tetons*, with the Yanktons of the North intend to come to war in a Short time against the nations in this quarter, & will kill every white man they See. M^r. T. also informs that M^r. Cameron² of S^t. Peters has put arms into the hands of the *Soues* to revenge the death of 3 of his men killed by the Chipaways latterley, and that the Band of tetons which we Saw is desposed to doe as we have advised them, thro the influence of their Chief the Black Buffalo.

M^r. Gravelin further informs that the Party which Robed us of the 2 horses laterly were all Sieoux 106 in number, they Called at the Recaras on their return, the Recares being displeased at their Conduct would not give them any thing to eate, that being the greatest insult they Could peaceably offer them, and upbraded them.

¹ Cf. Marquette's account of a similar remedy (*Jes. Relations*, lix, p. 101) and note thereon (p. 308). Coues mentions (*L. and C.*, i, pp. 238, 239), several plants which have in frontier tradition the reputation of curing snake-bites; but he adds, "Everybody knows the plant, except the botanists." Although unable to identify it, he thinks that there is some basis of fact for so universal a belief. See fuller description of this plant, *post*, in "Scientific Data: Botany." — Ed.

² Murdoch Cameron, a trader whose headquarters were on St. Peter's (now Minnesota) River; he was accused of selling liquor to the Indians. He became wealthy in the Indian trade, and died in 1811. See Coues's *Exped. Pike*, i, p. 66. — Ed.

March 1st Friday 1805

a fine Day I am ingaged in Copying a Map,¹ men building perogus, making Ropes, Burning Coal, Hanging up meat & making battle axes for Corn

2nd of March 1805 Saturday —

a fine Day the river brake up in places all engaged about Something M^r *LaRocque* a Clerk of the NW Company visit us, he has latterley returned from the Establishments on the Assinniboin River, with Merchindize to tarade with Indians. M^r L informs us the N.W. & XY² Companies have joined, & the head of the N.W. C^o is Dead M^r M^r Tavish of Montreal, visited by the Coal & Several Indians.

3rd of March Sunday 1805

a fine Day Wind from the NW, a large flock of Ducks pass up the River visited by the black Cat, Chief of the Mandans 2^d Chief and a Big Belley, they Stayed but a Short time we informed those Chiefs of the news rec[e]ved from the Recaras, all hands employd.

4th March Monday 1805 Fort Mandan

a cloudy morning wind from the NW the after part of the day Clear, visited by the Black Cat & Big white, who brought a Small present of meat, an Engage of the NW Co: Came for a horse, and requested in the name of the woman of the principal of his Department some Silk of three Colours, which we furnished. The Assinniboins who visited the Mandans a few days ago, returned and attempted to take horses of the Minetarees & were fired on by them.

¹ The several maps made by Clark during the expedition will be found either in the various text volumes of this series, or in the accompanying atlas. — Ed.

² Regarding the North West Company, see p. 206, note 1, ante. The X Y Company (also known as New Northwest Company) was formed in 1795, by Montreal merchants who seceded from the North West Company, mainly on account of the arbitrary acts of its chief, Simon McTavish; his death (July, 1804) led to the union of the two companies, on the 5th of November following. See Bryce's *Hist. H. B. Co.* pp. 147-153. The agreement of Nov. 5 is given by Masson (*Bourg. N.-O.*, ii, pp. 482-499). — Ed.

5th March Tuesday 1805

A fine Day, Thermometer at 40 above 0. Several Indians Visit us to day one frenchman Cross to join a Indian, the two to pass through by Land to the Ricaras with a Letter to M^r Tabbow

6th of March Wednesday 1805

a cloudy morning & Smokey all Day from the burning of the plains, which was set on fire by the *Minetarries* for an early crop of Grass, as an enducement for the Buffalow to feed on, the horses which was Stolen Some time ago by the Assiniboins from the *Menetarries* were returned yesterday. Visited by *Oh-harh* or the Little fox 2^d Chief of the lower Village of the *Me ne tar rees*. one man *Shannon* Cut his foot with the ads [adze] in working at the perogue, George & Gavelene go to the Village, the river rise a little to day.

7th of March Thursday 1805

a little cloudy and windey, NE. the *Coal* Visited us with a Sick child, to whome I gave Some of rushes¹ pills. Shabounar returned this evening from the Gross Ventres & informed that all the nation had returned from the hunting — he (our *Mene-tarre* interpeter) had received a present from M^r Chaboillez of the N.W. Company of the following articles 3 Brace² of Cloth 1 Brace of Scarlet a par Corduroy overalls 1 Vests 1 Brace Blu Cloth, 1 Brace red or Scorlet with 3 bars, 200 balls & Powder, 2 brac[e]s Tobacco, 3 Knives.

8th of March Friday 1805

a fair Morning cold and windey, wind from the East, visited by the Greesey head & a Ricara to day, those men gave Some account of the Indians near the rocky Mountains a young Indian (*Minetarre*) same nation & different village,

¹ Probably referring to Dr. Benjamin Rush, of Philadelphia, one of the most noted physicians of his day (1745-1813). — ED.

² A phonetic rendering of "brasse," a French measure commonly used in Canada, and equivalent to 5.318 English feet. Scarlet cloth was especially valued by the Indians. — ED.

Stole the Daughter of the Black man (*Mandan*), he went to his village took his horse & returned & took away his daughter¹

9th of March Saturday 1805

a Cloudy Cold and windey morning wind from the North. I walked up to See the Party that is makeing Perogues, about 5 miles above this, the wind hard and Cold on my way up I met the (*The Borgne*) Main Chief of the Manetarres, with four Indians on their way to see us, (*see note of 9 March after 10th Mar 1805*), I requested him to proceed on to the fort, where he would find Cap^t Lewis I should be there myself in corse of a few hours, Sent the interpiter back with him and proceeded on myself to the Canoes found them nearly fin[i]shed, the timber verry bad (*Qu x*), after visiting all the perogues where I found a number of Indians, I wind [went] to the upper mandan Village & Smoked a pipe (the greatest mark of friendship and attention) with the Chief and returned. on my return found the Manetarree Chief about Setting out on his return to his Village, having recived of Captain M. Lewis a *Medel Gorget armban*[d]s, a *Flag Shirt*, scarlet &c. &c. for which he was much pleased, those things were given in place of Sundery articles Sent to him which he Sais he did not receive, 2 guns were fired for this Great man.²

10th of March Sunday 1805.

a cold winday Day, we are visited by the Black Mockersons, Chief of the 2^d Minetarre Village and the Chief of the Shoeman Village (*Shoe or Mocassin Tr:*) or Mah hâ ha V. (*Wattassoans*) those Chiefs Stayed all day and the latter all night, and gave us man[y] Strang[e] accounts of his nation &c.

¹ More clearly worded by Biddle (i, p. 169), thus: "The father went to the village and found his daughter, whom he brought home, and took with him a horse belonging to the offender" — this last by way of reprisal, according to Indian custom, which is practically law among them. — Ed.

² This chief had lost an eye, hence his nickname of Le Borgne ("the one-eyed"). Biddle inserts several curious incidents illustrating the character of this chief, who was unusually ferocious and unscrupulous. See Brackenridge, *Journal of a Voyage up the River Missouri* (Baltimore, 1816), p. 261, for an account of Le Borgne. — Ed.

this Little tribe or band of Menetarrees (call themselves Ahnah-hâ-way or people whose Village is on the Hill. (*Insert this Ahnahaway is the nation Makhaha the village*) this little nation formerly lived about 30 miles below this, but being oppressed by the Assinniboins & Sous were Compelled to move near (5 miles) the Menetarees, where, the Assinniboins killed the most of them, those remaining built a village verry near to the Menetarries at the mouth of Knife R where they now live, and Can raise about 50 men, they are intermixed with the Mandans & Menatarries. the Mandans formerly lived in 6 (*nine*) large Villages at and above the mouth of *Chis-cheter* or Heart River four (*Six*) Villages on the West Side (*of the Missouri*) & two (*three*) on the East one of those Villages on the East Side of the Missouri & the larges[*t*] was entirely Cut off by the Seaux & the greater part of the other and the Small Pox reduced the others.

11th of March Monday 1805

A Cloudy Cold windy day, Some Snow in the latter part of the day, we deturmin to have two other Perogus made for to transport our Provisions &c.

We have every reason to believe that our *Menetarre* inter-peter (whome we intended to take with his wife, as an inter-peter through his wife to the Snake Indians of which nation She is) has been Corrupted by the [blank in MS] Company &c. Some explanation has taken place which Clearly proves to us the fact, we give him to night to reflect and deturmin whether or not he intends to go with us under the regulations Stated.

12th

a fine day Some Snow last night our Interpeter Shabonah, deturmins on not proceeding with us as an interpeter under the terms mentioned yesterday, he will not agree to work let our Situation be what it may nor Stand a guard, and if miffed with any man he wishes to return when he pleases, also have the disposal of as much provisions as he Chuses to Carry in admissable and we Suffer him to be off the engagement which was only virbal Wind NW

LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [March 13]

13th of March Wednesday 1805

a fine day visited by M^r M^r Kinzey one of the Clerks of the NW. Company, the river rising a little. Many Ind^s here to day all anxiety for war axes the Smiths have not an hour of Idle time to Spear wind SW.

14th March Thursday 1805. —

a fine day Set all hands to Shelling Corn &c. M^r M^r Kinsey leave us to day Many Indians as usual. wind west river Still rising.

15th of March Friday 1805 —

a fine day I put out all the goods, & Parch[ed] meal Clothing &c to Sun, a number of Indians here to day they make many remarks respecting our goods &c. Set Some men about Hulling Corn &c.

16th of March Saturday 1805 —

a cloudy day wind from the S.E. one Indian much displeas'd with white-house for Strikeing his hand when eating, with a Spoon for behaving badly. M^r Garrow show's us the way the recaras made their large Beeds.

[Lewis:]¹

M^r Garrow a Frenchman who has lived many years with the Ricares & Mandans shewed us the process used by those Indians to make beads. the discovery of this art these nations are said to have derived from the Snake Indians who have been taken prisoners by the Ricaras. the art is kept a secret by the Indians among themselves and is yet known to but few of them. the Prosess is as follows. — Take glass of as many different colours as you think proper, then pound it as fine as possible, puting each colour in a seperate vessel. wash the pounded Glass in severtal waters throwing off the water at

¹ This entry, written by Lewis under date of March 16, is in the MS. inserted after the entry for March 21. — Ed.



THE INTERIOR OF THE HUT OF A MANDAN CHIEF

each washing, continue this operation as long as the pounded glass stains or colours the water which is poured off and the residuum is then prepared for use. you then provide an earthen pot of convenient size say of three gallons which will stand the fire; a platter also of the same material sufficiently small to be admitted in the mouth of the pot or jar. the pot has a notch in it's edge through which to watch the beads when in blast. You then provide some well seasoned clay with a proportion of sand sufficient to prevent it's becoming very hard when exposed to the heat. this clay must be tempered with water untill it is about the consistency of common doe. of this clay you then prepare, a sufficient number of little sticks of the size you wish the hole through the bead, which you do by roling the clay on the palm of the hand with your finger. this done put those sticks of clay on the platter and expose them to a red heat for a few minutes when you take them off and suffer them to cool. the pot is also heated to cleas [cleanse] it perfectly of any filth it may contain. small balls of clay are also mad[e] of about an ounce weight which serve each as a pedestal for a bead. these while soft ar distributed over the face of the platter at su[c]h distance from each other as to prevent the beads from touching. some little wooden paddles are now provided from three to four inches in length sharpened or brought to a point at the extremity of the handle. with this paddle you place in the palm of the hand as much of the wet pounded glass as is necessary to make the bead of the size you wish it. it is then arranged with the paddle in an oblong form [form], laying one of those little stick of clay crosswise over it; the pounded glass by means of the paddle is then roped in cylindrical form around the stick of clay and gently roled by motion of the hand backwards and forwards untill you get it as regular and smooth as you conveniently can. if you wish to introduce any other colour you now purforate the surface of the bead with the pointed end of your little paddle and fill up the cavity with other pounded glass of the colour you wish forming the whole as regular as you can. a hole is now made in the center of the little pedestals of clay with the handle of your shovel sufficiently large

to admit the end of the stick of clay around which the bead is formed. the beads are then arranged perpendicularly on their pedestals and little distance above them supported by the little sticks of clay to which they are attached in the manner before mentioned. thus arranged the platter is deposited on burning coals or hot embers and the pot reversed with the aperture in its edge turned towards covers the whole. dry wood pretty much doated (*doughted*)¹ is then plased arroun [around] the pot in sush manner as compleatly to cover it [It] is then set on fire and the opperator must shortly after begin to watch his beads through the aperture of the pot le[s]t they should be destroyed by being over heated. he suffers the beads to acquire a deepred heat from which when it passes in a small degree to a pailer or whitish red, or he discovers that the beads begin to become pointed at their upper extremities he removes the fire from about the pot and suffers the whole to cool gradually. the pot is then removed and the beads taken out. the clay which fills the hollow of the beads is picked out with an awl or nedle. the bead is then fit for uce. The Indians are extreemly fond of the large beads formed by this process. they use them as pendants to their years, or hair and sometimes wear them about their necks.²

[Clark:]

17th of March Sunday —

a windey Day attempted to air our goods &c. M^r Chabonah Sent a frenchman of our party [to say] that he was Sorry for the foolish part he had acted and if we pleased he would accompany us agreeably to the terms we had perposed and doe every thing we wished him to doe &c. &c. he

¹ A variant of "doted," which *Century Dictionary* regards as an English provincialism; it means "decayed," or "rotted." Coues states that he had heard this word in North Carolina, applied to trees dead at the top, also to lumber prepared from unsound trees. — Ed.

² Catlin also mentions this manufacture of glass beads by the Mandans, and their exclusive possession of the art (*N. Amer. Inds.*, ii, p. 261). But Matthews says that the Arikara women also have it; he thinks that these peoples made "glazed earthen ornaments before the whites came among them" (*Hidatsa*, pp. 22, 23). — Ed.

had requested me Some thro our French inturpeter two days ago to excuse his Simplicity and take him into the cirvice, after he had taken his things across the River we called him in and Spoke to him on the Subject, he agreed to our terms and we agreed that he might go on with us &c. &c. but few Indians here to day, the river rising a little and Severall places open.

18th of March 1805 —

a Cold Cloudy Day wind from the N. I pack up all the Merchendize into 8 packs equally divided So as to have Something of every thing in each Canoe & perogue I am informed of a Party of Christanoes & Assinniboins being killed by the Sioux, 50 in Number near the Establishments on the Assinniboin R. a few days ago (the effect of M! Cammerons revenge on the Chipaways for killing 3 of his men) M! Tousent Chabono [Toussaint Charboneau], Enlisted as Interpreter this evening, I am not well to day,

19th of March 1805 —

Cold windey Day Cloudy Some little Snow last night visited to Day by the *big white* & Little Crow, also a man & his wife with a Sick Child, I administer for the child We are told that two parties are gone to war from the Big bellies and one other party going to war Shortly.

20th March Wednesday 1805.

I with all the men which could be Speared from the Fort went to Canoes, there I found a number of Indians, the men carried 4 to the River about 1½ miles thro' the Bottom, I visited the Chief of the Mandans in the Course of the Day and Smoked a pipe with himself and Several old men. Cloudy wind hard from N.

21st March Thursday 1805 —

a Cloudy Day Some Snow, the men Carried the remaining Canoes to the River, and all except 3 left to take care & complete the Canoes returned to the *fort* with their baggage, on my return to day to the Fort I came on the points of the high hills, Saw an emence quantity of Pumice Stone on the Sides & foot of the hills and emence beds of Pumice Stone near the Tops of the[m], with evident marks of the Hills haveing once been on fire, I Collected Some [of] the different [sorts] i. e. Stone Pumice Stone & a hard earth, and put them into a furnace, the hard earth melted and glazed the others two and the hard Clay became a punice Stone Glazed. I collected Some plants &c.

CHAPTER VII

FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE

Clark's Journal, March 22—April 27, 1805
 Lewis's Journal, April 7-27

[Clark:]

23 (22 mistake) of March Friday 1805

A CLOUDY Day visited by M^r. La[ro]ck, M^r. Kinsey¹ & the 2^d Chief of the Big bellies, the white wolf and many other Minataries, we Gave a Medal Some Clothes and wampom to the 2nd Chief and Delivered a Speech, which they all appeared well pleased with in the evening the men Danced M^r. Jessomme displeased.

24th (23) of March Saturday 1805—

after Brackfast M^r. La Rocque and M^r. M^r. Kinsey and the Cheifs & men of the Minetarras leave us. Soon after we were Visited by a Brother of the Burnia (*of the Borgne, or one eyed chief of the Menitarees*) who gave us a Vocabulary of his Language.² the Coal & many other Mandans also visit us to day a find Day in the fore part in the evening a little rain & the first this winter.

¹ Mr. La Rocque and I . . . became intimate with the gentlemen of the American expedition, who on all occasions seemed happy to see us, and always treated us with civility and kindness. It is true, Captain Lewis could not make himself agreeable to us. He could speak fluently and learnedly on all subjects, but his inveterate disposition against the British stained, at least in our eyes, all his eloquence. Captain Clarke was equally well informed, but his conversation was always pleasant, for he seemed to dislike giving offence unnecessarily. — MACKENZIE (*Masson's Bourg. N.-O.*, i, p. 336).

² As the Indians could not well comprehend the intention of recording their words, they concluded that the Americans had a wicked design upon their country. — MACKENZIE (*ut supra*, p. 337).

LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [March 24

25th (24th) of March Sunday 1805. —

a Cloudy morning wind from the NE the after part of the Day fair, Several Indians visit us to day, preparing to Set out on our journey, Saw Swans & Wild Gees flying N.E. this evening.

26th (25th) of March Monday 1805 —

a fine Day wind S.W. but few Ind^s Visit us to day the Ice haveing broken up in Several places, The ice began to brake away this evening and was near destroying our Canoes as they were dec[e]nding to the fort, river rose only 9 Inches to day preparing to Depart.

27th (26) of March Tuesday 1805 —

The river choked up with ice opposit to us and broke away in the evening raised only ½ Inch all employed preparing to Set out.

28th (27) of March Friday (Wednesday) 1805 —

a windey Blustering Day Wind S W ice running the [ice] Blocked up in view for the Space of 4 hours and gave way leaveing great quantity of *ice* on the Shallow Sand bars. had all the Canoes corked [calked] pitched & tined in and on the cracks and windshake which is unversially in the Cotton wood.

29th (28) of March Saturday (Thursday) 1805 —

The ice has stoped running owing to Som obstickle above, repare the Boat & Perogues, and preparing to Set out but few Indians visit us to day they are now attending on the river bank to Catch the floating Buffalow

30th (29) of March Sunday (Friday) 1805 —

The obstickle broke away above & the ice came down in great quantities the river rose 13 inches the last 24 hours I observed extrodanary dexterity of the Indians in jumping from one cake of ice to another, for the purpose of Catching the

buffalow as they float down¹ many of the cakes of ice which they pass over are not two feet square. The Plains are on fire in View of the fort on both Sides of the River, it is Said to be common for the Indians to burn the Plains near their Villages every Spring for the benefit of their hors[e]s, (*Qu*) and to induce the Buffalow to come near to them.

31 : (30th) *Saturday. of March Monday (Saturday) (Sunday) 1805 —*

(*Ser. Ordway now here*) Cloudy Day Sever[al] Gangs of Gees and Ducks pass up the river. but a Small portion of ice floating down to day, but few Ind^s Visit us to day all the party in high Sperits they pass but few nights without amuseing themselves dancing possessing perfect harmony and good understanding towards each other, Generally helthy except Venerials Complaints which is verry Common amongst the natives (*Qu*.) and the men Catch it from them

April the 1st Tuesday (Monday) 1805 —

The fore part of to day haile rain with Thunder & lightning, the rain continued by intimitions all day, it is worthey of remark that this is the 1st rain which has fallen Sence we have been here or Sence the 15 of October last, except a few drops at two or three defferent times. had the Boat Perogues & Canoes all put into the Water.

April the 2nd Friday (Tuesday) 1805 —

a cloudy day, rained all the last night we are preparing to Set out all thing nearly ready. The 2^d Chief of the 2^d Mandan Village took a miff at our not attending to him perticularly after being here about ten days and moved back to his village.

The Mandans Killed twenty one elk yesterday 15 miles below this, they were So Meager that they [were] Scercely fit for use.

¹ Biddle describes the manner in which the Indians capture buffaloes which, trying to cross the river, have become isolated on ice-floes. Mackenzie (*ut supra*, p. 337) states that the Indians on the Missouri also search eagerly for the carcasses of buffaloes and other drowned animals that float down the river in the spring season; these, although rotten and of intolerable stench, "are preferred by the Natives to any other kind of food. . . . So fond are the Mandanes of putrid meat that they bury animals whole in the winter for the consumption of the spring" — ED.

April the 3rd Thursday (Wednesday) 1805 —

a white frost this morning, Some ice on the edge of the water, a fine day Pack up and prepare to load

observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant and artificial horizon

A.M.	7 H.	- 51 m	- 15.s.	P.M.	5 h.	- 1 m.	- 22 s.
"	"	- 52	- 52.5	"	5	- 3	- 3
"	"	- 54	- 30	"	"	- 5	- 41

altitude produc'd from this observation is $36^{\circ} - 31'' - 15''$. *Chronometer* too fast 32 minits

observed Time and Distance of ☉^s & ☽^s nearest limbs with the Sextant and Chronomiter — Sun west.

<i>Time</i>		<i>Distance</i>	
PM.	5 H. - 15 M.	- 50 S.	$43^{\circ} - 27' - 15''$
"	- 18	- 24	" - 30 - 0
"	- 20	- 5	" - 30 - 30
"	- 31	- 29	" - 34 - 0
"	- 36	- 47	" - 36 - 30
"	- 39	- 7	" - 37 - 15
"	- 40	- 55	" - 37 - 30

M^o La Roche & M^cKinsey Clerk to the N W. Comp^y Visit us. M^r M^cKinsey wishes to Get pay for his horse lost in our Service this Winter and one of which our men were robbed this winter by the Tetons, we Shall pay this man for his horse. we are all day engaged packing up Sundery articles to be sent to the President of the U.S.¹

Box N^o 1, contains the following articles i. e.

In package N^o 3 & 4 Male & female antelope, with their Skelitons.

¹ Some of the articles were long on exhibition at Monticello. Others passed to Peale's museum in Philadelphia, and there some of the specimens are still to be found. See note by Witmer Stone, on "Zoology of the Lewis and Clark Expedition," in "Scientific Data: Zoology," Vol. vi of the present work. — E.D.

N^o 7 & 9 the horns of two mule or Black tailed deer, a Mandan bow an[d] quiver of arrows — with some Recara's tobacco seed.

N^o 11 a Martin Skin, Containing the tail of a Mule Deer, a weasel and three Squirrels from the Rocky mountains.

N^o 12, The bones & Skeleton of a Small burrowing wolf of the Praries the Skin being lost by accident.

N^o 99. The Skeliton of the white and Grey hare.

Box N^o 2, Contains 4 Buffalo *Robes*, and a ear of Mandan Corn.

The large Trunk Contains a male & female *Braro* or burrowing dog of the Praire and the female's *Skeliton*.

a carrote of Ricaras *Tobacco*

a red fox Skin Containing a *Maggie*

N^o 14 Minitarras Buffalo robe Containing Some articles of Indian dress.

N^o 15 a mandan *robe* containing two burrowing Squirrels, a white *weasel* and the Skin of a Loucirvia. also

13 red fox Skins.

1 white Hare Skin &c.

4 horns of the mountain ram

1 Robe representing a battle between the Sioux & Ricaras against the Minetares and Mandans.

In Box N^o 3.

N^o 1 & 2 the Skins of the Male & female Antelope with their *Skelitons*. & the Skin of a Yellow *Bear* which I obtained from the *Sioux*

N^o 4. Box. Specimens of plants numbered from 1. to 67.

Specimens of Plants numbered from 1 to 60.

1 Earthen pot Such as the Mandans manufacture and use for culinary purposes.¹

1 Tin box containing insects mice &c.

a Specimine of the fur of the antilope.

a Specimon of a plant, and a parcel of its roots higly prized by the natives as an efficacious remedy in cases of the bite of the rattle Snake or Mad Dog.

¹ Catlin says (*N. Amer. Inds.*, pp. 260, 261) that specimens of the pottery taken from the burial mounds in Ohio "were to be seen in great numbers in the use of the Mandans; and scarcely a day in the summer, when the visitor to their village would not see the women at work with their hands and fingers, moulding them from black clay, into vases, cups, pitchers, and pots, and baking them in their little kilns in the sides of the hill, or under the bank of the river." — Ed.

In a large Trunk ¹
 Skins of a male and female Braro, or burrowing Dog of the Prarie,
 with the Skeleton of the female.
 1 Skin of the red fox Containing a Magpie
 2 Cased Skins of the white hare.
 1 Minitarra Buffalow robe Containing Some articles of Indian
 Dress.
 1 Mandan Buffalow robe Containing a dressed Louisirva Skin, and
 2 cased Skins of the Burrowing Squirrel of the Praries.
 13 red fox Skins
 4 Horns of the Mountain Ram, or *big born*.
 1 Buffalow robe painted by a mandan man representing a battle
 fought 8 years Since by the Sioux & Recaras against the mandans,
 me ni tarras & Ah wah har ways. (Mandans &c. on horseback

Cage N^o 6.

Contains a liveing burrowing Squirrel of the praries

Cage N^o 7.

Contains 4 liveing Magpies

Cage N^o 9.

Containing a liveing hen of the Prairie
 a large par of Elks horns containing [*contained*, i. e., held together —
 Ed.] by the frontal bone.

April the 4th 1805 Wednesday (Thursday) —

a blustering windy Day the Clerks of the N W Co. leave
 us, we are arrangeing all things to Set out. &c.

April the 5th 1805 Thursday (Friday) —

we have our 2 perogues & Six Canoes loaded with our Stores
 & provisions, principally provisions. the wind very high from
 the NW. a number of Mandans Visit us to day ²

¹ Repetition of the contents of "the large trunk," mentioned above. — Ed.

² Gass here mentions the prevalence of licentiousness among the Indians on the
 Missouri. — Ed.

April the 6th Friday (Saturday) 1805 —

a fine day visited by a number of Mandans, we are informed of the arrival of the whole of the *recarra* nation on the other Side of the river near their old village, we Sent an interpreter to see with orders to return imediately and let us know if their Chiefs ment to go down to See their great father.

[Lewis:]

Fort Mandan April 7th. 1805.¹

Having on this day at 4. P.M. completed every arrangement necessary for our departure, we dismissed the barge and crew with orders to return without loss of time to St. Louis, a small canoe with two French hunters accompanied the barge; these men had assended the missouri with us the last year as engages.² The barge crew consisted of six soldiers and two [blank space in MS.] Frenchmen; two Frenchmen and a Ricara Indian also take their passage in her as far as the Ricara Vilages, at which place we expect Mr. Tiebeau [Tabeau] to embark with his peltry who in that case will make an addition of two, perhaps four men to the crew of the barge. We gave Richard Warfington, a discharged Corp^l, the charge of the Barge and crew, and confided to his care likewise our dispatches to the government, letters to our private friends, and a number of articles to the President the United States.³ One of the Frenchmen by the Name of (*Joseph*) Gravline an honest discrete man and an excellent boat-man is employed to conduct the barge as a pilot; we have therefore every hope that the barge and with her our dispatches will arrive safe at S^c. Louis. Mr. Gravlin

¹ At this point begins Codex D, which is entirely in Lewis's handwriting, and continues the journal of the expedition until May 23, 1805. — ED.

² These were François Rivet and Philippe Degie, whom the explorers met on their return journey Aug. 21, 1806. Mrs. E. E. Dye writes to us that they afterwards went to Oregon and settled in Champoeg, and were locally celebrated as being men who had been with Lewis and Clark. — ED.

³ Coues (*L. and C.*, i, pp. 253-260) gives in his notes on this entry all the information he could gather regarding the personnel of the party which left Fort Mandan to continue the transcontinental explorations; he also cites a letter by Lewis, which explains how Corporal Warfington came to be retained on the muster-roll after his term of service had expired. He was the only one of the party returning to St. Louis whom Lewis could entrust with his despatches to the government, and his commander praises his fidelity. — ED.

who speaks the Ricara language extremely well, has been employed to conduct a few of the Recara Chiefs to the seat of government who have promised us to descend in the barge to S': Liwis with that view.

At same moment that the Barge departed from Fort Mandan, Capt. Clark embarked with our party and proceeded up the River. as I had used no exercise for several weeks, I determined to walk on shore as far as our encampment of this evening; accordingly I continued my walk on the N. side of the River about six miles, to the upper Village of the Mandans, and called on the Black Cat or Pose-cop'-se-ha', the great chief of the Mandans; he was not at home; I rested myself a [few] minutes, and finding that the party had not arrived I returned about 2 miles and joined them at their encampment on the N. side of the river opposite the lower Mandan village. Our party now consisted of the following Individuals. Serg^{ts}. John Ordway, Nathaniel Prior, & Patric Gass; Privates, William Bratton, John Colter, Reubin, and Joseph Fields, John Shields, George Gibson, George Shannon, John Potts, John Collins, Joseph Whitehouse, Richard Windsor, Alexander Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Goodrich, Robert Frazier, Peter Crouzatt, John Baptist la Page, Francis Labiech, Hue M^c.Neal, William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, and John B. Thompson. *Interpreters*, George Drewyer and Tausant Charbono also a Black man by the name of York, servant to Capt. Clark, an Indian Woman wife to Charbono with a young child, and a Mandan man who had promised us to accompany us as far as the Snake Indians with a view to bring about a good understanding and friendly intercourse between that nation and his own, the Minetares and Ahwahharways.

Our vessels consisted of six small canoes, and two large pirogues. This little fleet altho' not quite so respectable as those of Columbus or Capt. Cook, were still viewed by us with as much pleasure as those deservedly famed adventurers ever beheld theirs; and I dare say with quite as much anxiety for their safety and preservation. we were now about to penetrate a country at least two thousand miles in width, on which the foot of civilized man had never trodden; the good or evil

it had in store for us was for experiment yet to determine, and these little vessells contained every article by which we were to expect to subsist or defend ourselves. however, as the state of mind in which we are, generally gives the colouring to events, when the immagination is suffered to wander into futurity, the picture which now presented itself to me was a most pleasing one. enterta[in]ing as I do, the most confident hope of succeeding in a voyage which had formed a da[r]ling project of mine for the last ten years, I could but esteem this moment of my departure as among the most happy of my life. The party are in excellent health and sperits, zealously attached to the enterprise, and anxious to proceed; not a whisper of murmur or discontent to be heard among them, but all act in unison, and with the most perfect harmony. I took an early supper this evening and went to bed. Capt. Clark myself the two Interpreters and the woman and child sleep in a tent of dressed skins. this tent is in the Indian stile, formed of a number of dressed Buffaloe skins sewed together with sinues.¹ it is cut in such manner that when foalded double it forms the quarter of a circle, and is left open at one side here it may be attached or loosened at pleasure (*Qd*) by strings which are sewed to its sides for the purpose. to erect this tent, a parsel of ten or twelve poles are provided, fore or five of which are attached together at one end, they are then elivated and their lower extremities are spread in a circular manner to a width proportionate to the demention of the lodge; in the same position orther poles are leant against those, and the leather is then thrown over them forming a conic figure.

[Clark:]

7th of April Saturday [Sunday] 1805² —

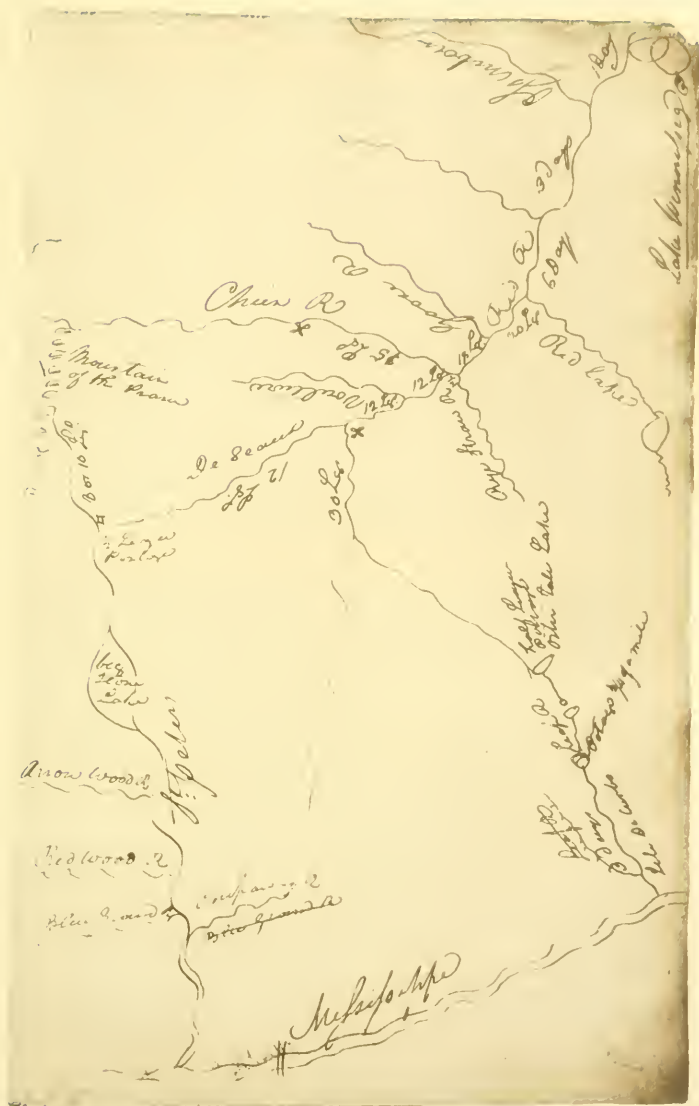
a windey day, The Interpreter we Sent to the Villages returned with Chief of the Ricara's & 3 men of that nation,

¹ Catlin enumerates (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, p. 262) the many uses made by the Indians of the buffalo in their domestic economy — for food, clothing, implements, weapons, etc. — ED.

² We obtain Clark's journal from April 7—July 3, 1805 (except where otherwise noted) from Clark-Voorhis note-book No. 1; save that the first Clark entry of April 7 is from Codex C of the Philadelphia collection. — ED.

this Chief informed us that he was Sent by his nation to know the dispositions of the nations in this neighbourhood in respect to the recara's Settling near them, that he had not yet made those arrangements, he request that we would speak to the Assinniboin, & Crow Ind: in their favour, that they wished to follow our directions and be at peace with all, he viewed all nations in this quarter well disposed except the Sioux. The wish of those recaras appears to be a junction with the Mandans & Minetarras in a Defensive war with the Sioux who rob them of every Spece [species] of property in Such a manner that they cannot live near them any longer. I told this Chief we were glad to See him, and we viewed his nation as the Dutifull Children of a Great father who would extend his protection to all those who would open their ears to his good advice, we had already Spoken to the Assinniboins, and should Speeke to the Crow Indians if we should see them &c. as to the Sioux their Great father would not let them have any more good Guns &c. would take care to prosu Such measurs as would prevent those Sioux from Murd[er]ing and taking the property from his dutyfull red Children &c. we gave him a certificate of his good Conduct & a Small Medal, a Carrot of Tobacco and a String of Wompom. he requested that one of his men who was lame might decend in the boat to their nation and returned to the Mandans well Satisfied. The name of this Chief of War is *Kah-kah, We-to* — Raven brave. This Cheif delivered us a letter from M: Taboe. informing us of the wish of the Grand Chiefs of the Recarras to visit their Great father and requesting the privilage of put'g on board the boat 3000^b of Skins &c. & adding 4 hands and himself to the party. this preposal we Shall agree to, as that addition will make the party in the boat 15 Strong and more able to defend themselves from the Seoux &c.¹

¹ Here ends the daily record kept by Clark, as contained in Codex C. The rest of the codex is occupied with matter outside of that record, which will be found in "Scientific Data." Towards the close of the codex is Clark's sketch map of the Red and St. Peter's Rivers, herewith reproduced. — Ed.



Red and St. Peter's Rivers,
 sketch-plan by Clark.

[Clark:]

Fort Mandan April 7th 1805

Sunday, at 4 o'clock PM, the Boat, in which was 6 Soldiers 2 frenchmen & an Indian, all under the command of a corporal who had the charge of dispatches, &c. — and a canoe with 2 french men, Set out down the river for St. Louis. at the same time we Sout out on our voyage up the river in 2 perogues and 6 canoes, and proceded on to the 1st villag. of Mandans & camped on the S.S. our party consisting of Serg^t Nathaniel Pryor Sg^t John Ordway. Sg^t Pat: Gass, William Bratten, John Colter Joseph & Reuben Fields. John Shields George Gibson George Shannon, John Potts, John Collins, Jos: Whitehouse, Richard Windser, Alexander Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Gutrich, Robert Frazure, Peter Crouzat, John Baptist la page, Francis Labich, Hugh M^c Neal, William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, J. B. Thompson and my servent york, George Drew yer who acts as a hunter & interpreter, Shabonah and his *Indian Squar* to act as an Interpreter & interpretress for the snake Indians — one Mandan & Shabonahs infant. *Sah-kab-gar we â*

[Lewis:]

April 8th.

Set out early this morning, the wind blew hard against us, from the N.W. we therefore traveled very slowly. I walked on shore, and visited the *black Cat*, took leave of him after smoking a pipe as is their custom, and then proceeded on slowly by land about four miles where I wated the arrival of the party, at 12 O'clock they came up and informed me that one of the small canoes was behind in distress. Cap^t. Clark returned fou[n]d she had filled with water and all her loading wet. we lost half a bag of bisquit, and about thirty pounds of powder by this accedent; the powder we regard as a serious loss, but we spread it to dry immediately and hope we shall still be enabled to restore the greater part of it. this was the only powder we had which was not perfectly secure from getting wet. we took dinner at this place, and then proceed on to oure encampment, which was on the N. side opposite to a high bluff.¹ the Mandan man came up after we had en-

¹ Near the present Hancock, N. D. — ED.

camped and brought with him a woman who was extremely solicitous to accompany one of the men of our party, this however we positively refused to permit.

Courses distances and references for Apl. 8th.

From the upper point on an island (being the point to which Capt. Clark took his last course when he ascended the river in search of a place for winter quarters 1st November last) to a point of wood land Star'd side, passing a high bluff on the Lar'd. $N 40^{\circ} W. 3\frac{1}{2}$.

[Clark:]

8th of April Monday 1805

Set out very early wind hard a head from the N.W. proceeded on passed all the villages the inhabitants of which flocked down in great numbers to view us, I took my leave of the great Chief of the Mandans who gave me a pair of excellent mockers, one canoe filled with water every thing in her got wet $\frac{2}{3}$ of a barrel of powder lost by this accident.

From the upper part of an island just below Marpar-
perycopatoo's camp to a point of wood land on the
Sta^d side passing a high bluff on the La^d containing
many horizontal narrow stratas of Carbonate wood,
some of which are sixty feet above the su[r]face of
the water } N. $40^{\circ} W. 3\frac{1}{2}$

Camped on the S.S. ops^d a high bluff. an Indian Joined us, also an Indian woman with a view to accompany us, the woman was Sent back the man being acquainted with the country we allowed him to accompanie us

[Lewis:]

Tuesday April 9th

Set out as early as it was possible to see this morning and proceed about five miles where we halted and took beakfast the Indian man who had promised us to accompany us as far as the Snake Indians, now informed us of his intention to relinquish the journey, and accordingly returned to his village. we saw a great number of brant passing up the river, some

of them were white, except the large feathers in the first and second joint of the wing which are black. there is no other difference between them and the common gray brant but that of their colour — their note and habits are the same, and they are frequently seen to associate together. I have not yet positively determined whether they are the same, or a different species. Capt Clark walked on shore to-day¹ and informed me on his return, that passing through the prairie he had seen an animal that precisely resembled the burrowing squirrel, except in point of size, it being only about one third as large as the squirrel, and that it also burrows. I have observed in many parts of the plains and prairies, the work of an animal of which I could never obtain a view. their work resembles that of the salamander common to the sand hills of the States of South Carolina and Georgia, and like that animal also it never appears above the ground. the little hillocks which are thrown up by these animals have much the appearance of ten or twelve pounds of loose earth poared out of a vessel on the surface of the plain. in the state they leave them you can discover no hole through which they throw out this earth; but by removing the loose earth gently you may discover that the soil has been broken in a circle manner for about an inch and a half in diameter; where it appears looser than the adjacent surface, and is certainly the place through which the earth has been thrown out, tho' the operation is performed without leaving any visible aperture. the Bluffs of the river which we passed today were upwards of a hundred feet high, formed of a mixture of yellow clay and sand — many horizontal stratas of carbonated wood, having every appearance of pitcoal at a distance; were seen in the face of these bluffs. these stratas are of unequal thicknesses from 1 to 5 feet, and appear at different elevations above the water some of them as much as eighty feet.² the hills of the river are very broken, and many of them have the appearance of having been

¹ That Lewis occupied himself with writing his journal is evidenced by the entry in his weather diary for this date (Codex Fe, p. 4): "The perogee is so unsteady that I can scarcely write." — ED.

² The so-called "coal" near Fort Mandan was lignite, extensive beds of which exist in that region. — ED.

on fire at some former period. considerable quantities of pumice stone and lava appear in many parts of these hills where they are broken and washed Down by the rain and melting snow. when we halted for dinner the squaw busied herself in serching for the wild artichokes which the mice¹ collect and deposit in large hoards. this operation she performed by penetrating the earth with a sharp stick about some small collections of drift wood. her labour soon proved successful, and she procured a good quantity of these roots. the flavor of this root resembles that of the Jerusalem Artichoke, and the stalk of the weed which produces it is also similar, tho' both the root and stalk are much smaller than the Jerusalem Artichoke. the root is white and of an ovate form, from one to three inches in length and usually about the size of a man's finger. one stalk produces from two to four, and somitimes six of these roots.

at the distance of 6 miles passed a large wintering or hunting camp of the Minetares on the Star^d side. these lodges about thirty in number are built of earth and timber in their usual stile. $2\frac{1}{4}$ miles higher we passed the entrance of Miry Creek, which discharges itself on the Star^d side. this creek is but small, — takes it's rise in some small lakes near the Mouse river and passes in it's course to the Missouri, through beautiful, level, and fertile plains, intirely destitute of timber. Three miles above the mouth of this creek we passed a hunting camp of Minetares who had prepared a park and were wating the return of the Antelope; which usually pass the Missouri at this season of the year from the Black hills on the South side, to the open plains on the north side of the river; in like manner the Antelope repasses the Missouri from N. to South in the latter end of Autumn, and winter in the black hills, where there is considerable bodies of woodland. we proceed on $11\frac{1}{2}$ miles further and encamped on the N. *side* in a most beatifull high extensive open bottom.²

¹ Probably gophers; Coues thinks that the burrowing animal just described by Lewis is the pouched rat or pocket-gopher (either *Geomys* or *Thomomys*). — Ed.

² Not far above the present Fort Stevenson. — Ed.

The courses and distances of this day are as follow

	miles
N. 20 ^o W. to a Star ^d point opposte to a bluff	1
N. to a Star ^d point d ^o d ^o d ^o	$\frac{1}{2}$
N. 80. E. to a sand point on Lar ^d side	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. to a Lar ^d point	$\frac{1}{2}$
N. 18. W. to a handsome elivated plain on Lar ^d S ^d	1
N. 22. E. to a point of willows on Lar ^d side opposit } to a wintering camp of the Minetares }	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 20. W. to the mouth of Miry creek Star ^d side, passing a small run and a hill called snake den	2 $\frac{1}{4}$
W. to a point on Lar ^d side	1
S. 75 W. to a point on Star ^d opposite to a camp of Minetares, and lower po. ^t of a high bluff	4
N. 65. W. to the upper point point of woo[d]land on St ^d s ^d	3
S. 45. W. to a point of timber on the Lar ^d side	2
S. 30. W. to a sand point on the Star ^d side	1 $\frac{1}{4}$
S. 78. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side	4
	<u>23 $\frac{1}{2}$</u>

[Clark:]

9th of April Tuesday 1805. —

Set out this morning verry early under a gentle breeze from the S.E. at Brackfast the Indian deturmined to return to his nation. I saw a Musquetor to day great numbers of Brant flying up the river, the Maple, & Elm has buded & cotton and arrow wood beginning to bud. I saw in the prarie an animal resembling the Prarie dog or Barking Squirrel & burrow in the same way, this animal was about $\frac{1}{3}$ as large as the barking Squirrel. But few resident birds or water fowls which I have Seen as yet at 6 miles passed an old hunting camp of Menitarres on the S. S. $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles higher passed the mouth of Miry Creek on the S.S. passed a hunting camp of Mene-tarres on the S.S. waiting the return of the Antilope, Saw Great numbers of Gees feedin in the Praries on the young grass, I saw flowers in the praries to day, juniper grows on the Sides of the hills, & runs on the ground all the hills have more or Less indifferet coal in stratas at different hites from the waters edge to 80 feet. those stratas from 1 inch to 5 feet thick we camp^d on the S.S. above some rocks makeing out in the river in a butifull ellivated plain.

Course distance & references for the 9th

N. 20° W.	1	mile on the S. p ^t ops ^d a Bluff
N - - -	½	a mile on the S. p ^t d ^o .
N. 80° E	1 ½	miles to a sand p ^t on the L.S.
N. ———	½	a mile to the L. p ^t
N. 18° W.	1	mile to a handsom elivated plain on L.S.
N. 22° E	1 ½	miles to a p ^t of willows on the L.S. opposit a Win- tering camp of the Minitarrees.
N. 20° W.	2 ¾	miles to the mouth of Miry Creek, pass'd a hill call[ed] Snake house & a small run S.S.
West	1	mile to a p ^t on the Larboard side
S. 75° W.	4	miles to a p ^t on the S. S. ops ^d a Bluff and a camp of Miniterras.
N. 65° W.	3	miles to the upper part of the timber S.S.
S. 45° W.	2	miles to a p ^t of timber on the L.S.
S. 30. W.	1 ¼	miles to a Sand p ^t on the S.S.
S. 78° W.	4	miles to a p ^t of wood on the L.S.
		23 ½

[Lewis:]

Wednesday April 10th 1805.

Set out at an early hour this morning, at the distance of three miles passed some Minetares who had assembled themselves on the Lard [larboard] shore to take a view of our little fleet. Capt Clark walked on shore to-day, for several hours, when he returned he informed me that he had seen a gang of Antelopes in the plains but was unable to get a shoot at them, he also saw some geese and swan. the geese are now feeding in considerable numbers on the young grass which has sprung up in the bottom praries. the Musquetoes were very troublesome to us to-day. The country on both sides of the missouri from the tops of the river hills, is one continued level fertile plain as far as the eye can reach, in which there is not even a solitary tree or shrub to be seen, except such as from their moist situations or the steep declivities of hills are sheltered from the ravages of the fire. at the distance of 12 miles from our encampment of last night we arrived at the lower point of a bluff on the Lard side; about 1 ½ miles down this bluff from this point, the bluff is now on fire and throws out considerable quantities of smoke which has a strong sul-



IPITIH-TAK-OCHETÄ
Seven of the Hudson Men

phurios smell. the appearance of the coal in the blufs continues as yesterday.¹ at 1. P.M. we overtook three french hunters who had set out a few days before us with a view of trapping beaver; they had taken 12 since they left Fort Mandan. these people avail themselves of the protection which our numbers will enable us to give them against the Assiniboins who sometimes hunt on the Missouri; and intend ascending with us as far as the mouth of the Yellow stone river and continue there hunt up that river. this is the first essay of a beaver hunter of any discription on this river. the beaver these people have already taken is by far the best I have ever seen. the river bottoms we have passed to-day are wider and possess more timber than usual. the courant of the Missouri is but moderate, at least not greater than that of the Ohio in high tide; it's banks are falling in but little; the navigation is therefore comparitively with it's lower portion easy and safe. we encamped this evening on a willow point, Star^d side just above a remarkable bend in the river to the S.W. which we called the little bason.²

Cou[r]ses and distances of this day.

	miles.
S. 45. W. to a point of timbered land on the S th Si ^d	3
W. to a point of timbered land on the Lar ^d s ^d	3
S. 72. W. to a tree in a bend on the Star ^d side	2
S. 32. W. to a point of woods on the Star ^d side	4
W. on the Star ^d point	$\frac{1}{2}$
N. 40. W. on the Star ^d point	$\frac{1}{2}$
N. 50. E. to a point on the Lar ^d side, opposite to a low bluff	2
S. 52. W. to a point on the Star ^d side opposite to a bluff, above which a small creek falls in.	$3\frac{1}{2}$
	$18\frac{1}{2}$

¹ This region "is the fringe of the well-known *mauvaises terres* [*'Bad Lands'*] to the south, through the heart of which the Little Missouri flows. . . . The country is underlaid with vast beds of lignite coal, which has burned out over wide areas. . . . Coal veins form lines plainly distinguishable in the hills bordering the river, and . . . some of these veins are [even now] burning, and emit sulphurous odors." — OLIN D. WHEELER.

² Not far from the site of Fort Berthold, built by the American Fur Company in 1845. The name was transferred (1862) to another post, built in the Indian village. Both structures were finally destroyed by fire — the former in 1862, the latter in 1874. — ED.

[Clark:]

10th of April Wednesday 1805

Set out verry early. the morning cool and no wind proceeded on passed a camp of Ind^s on the L.S. this day proved to be verry worm, the Misquetors troublesom. I saw Several antilope on the S.S. also gees & swan, we over took 3 french men Trappers The country to day as usial except that the points of Timber is larger than below, the coal continue to day, one man saw a hill on fire at no great distance from the river, we camped on the S.S. just above a remarkable bend in the river to the S W, which We call the little *bason*.

Course Distance & references the 10th

S. 45° W.	3	miles to a p ^t of timbered land on the S.S.
West	3	miles to a p ^t of timbered land on the L.S.
S. 72° W.	2	miles to a tree in an elevated plain in the bend to the S. S.
S. 32° W.	4	miles to a p ^t of wood on the S.S.
West	$\frac{1}{2}$	a mile on the S. point.
N. 40° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	a mile on the S. point.
N. 50° E	2	miles to a p ^t on the L.S. ops ^d a low bluff.
S. 52° W	$3\frac{1}{2}$	miles to a p ^t on the S.S. ops ^d a bluff above which a
	$18\frac{1}{2}$	small creek falls in

[Lewis:]

Thursday April 11th.

Set out at an early hour; I proceeded with the party and Capt. Clark with George Drewyer walked on shore in order to procure some fresh meat if possible. we proceeded on abot five miles, and halted for breakfast, when Capt. Clark and Drewyer joined us; the latter had killed, and brought with him a deer, which was at this moment excep[t]able, as we had had no fresh meat for several days. the country from fort Mandan to this place is so constantly hunted by the Mine-teraries that there is but little game. we halted at two P.M. and made a comfortable dinner on a venison stake and beavers tales with the bisquit which got wet on the 8th ins^t. by the accident of the canoe filling with water before mentioned. the powder which got wet by the same accedent, and which we had spread to dry on the baggage of the large perogue, was now examined and put up; it appears to be almost restored, and

our loss is therefore not so great as we had at first apprehended. the country much the same as yesterday. on the sides of the hills and even the banks of the rivers and sand-bars, there is a white substance t[h]at appears in considerable quantities on the surface of the earth, which tastes like a mixture of common salt and glauber salts. many of the springs which flow from the base of the river hills are so strongly impregnated with this substance that the water is extremely unpleasant to the taste and has a purgative effect.¹ saw some large white cranes pass up the river — these are the largest bird of that genus common to the country through which the Missouri and Mississippi pass. they are perfectly white except the large feathers of the two first joints of the wing which are black. we encamped this evening on the Star^d shore just above the point of woodland which formed to extremity of the last course of this day. there is a high bluff opposite to us, under which we saw some Indians, but the river is here so wide that we could not speake to them; suppose them to be a hunting party of Minetares. we killed two gees to-day.

The courses and distances of this day

	miles
S. 85. W. to the upper point of a bluff on Lar ^d S ^d	3
N. 38. W. to a point on the Lar ^d shore, oppo ^t a bluff	2
S. 30. W. to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the Lar ^d side. a large sand bar making out from the Star ^d side 1 1/2 miles wide	2
N. 52. W. to a red knob in a bend to the Sta ^d side near the upper part of a timbered bottom	5
S. 70. W. to a point of timbered land on the Star ^d Sd.	6
W. on the Star ^d point	1
	19

¹ The famous "alkali" of the West, often rendering the water undrinkable, and covering great areas like snow. It consists largely or mainly of sulphate of soda. — Ed.

[Clark:]

11th of April Thursday 1805.

Set out verry early I walked on Shore, saw fresh bear tracks, one deer & 2 beaver killed this morning in the after part of the day killed two gees, saw great numbers of Gees Brant & Mallard Some White Cranes Swan & guls, the plains begin to have a green appearance, the hills on either side are from 5 to 7 miles asunder and in maney places have been burnt, appearing at a distance of a redish brown choler, containing Pumice Stone & *lava*, some of which rolin down to the base of those hills. In many of those hills forming bluffs to the river we prosieve Several Stratums of bituminous substance which resembles *coal*; thoug[h] Some of the pieces appear to be excellent coal, it resists the fire for some[time], and consumes without emiting much flain.

The plains are high and rich some of them are sandy containing small pebbles, and on some of the hill Sides large Stones are to be seen. In the evening late we observed a party of *Menetarras* on the L.S. with horses and dogs loaded going down, those are a part of the Minitarras who camped a little above this with the Ossinniboins at the mouth of the little Missouri all the latter part of the winter. we camped on the S.S. below a falling in bank. the river raise a little.

Course distance &c. the 11th

- S. 85° W. 2 miles to the upper part of a Bluff in a bend to the Lardboard Side.
 N. 38° W. 3 miles to a point on the L.S. ops^d a bluff.
 S. 30° W. 2 miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the L.S. a large sand bar makeing out from the S.S. 1½ mi^s
 N 52° W. 5 miles to a red knob in a bend to the S.S. near the upper part of wood bottom.
 S. 70° W. 6 miles to a timbered point on the S.S.
 West $\frac{1}{19}$ mile on the S. point.

[Lewis:]

Friday April the 12th 1805

Set out at an early hour. our peroge and the Canoes passed over to the Lard side, in order to avoid a bank which was rapidly falling in on the Star^d. the red peroge contrary

to my expectation or wish passed under this bank by means of her toe line; where I expected to have seen her carried under every instant. I did not discover that she was about to make this attempt until it was too late for the men to re-embark, and retreating is more dangerous than proceeding in such cases; they therefore continued their passage up this bank, and much to my satisfaction arrived safe above it. This cost me some moments of uneasiness, her cargo was of much importance to us in our present advanced situation. We proceeded on six miles and came too on the lower side of the entrance of the little Missouri on the Lard shore in a fine plain where we determined to spend the day for the purpose of celestial observation. we sent out 10 hunters to procure some fresh meat. at this place made the following observations.

Point of Observation N^o 1.

Observed ☉'s Magnetic Azimuth with Circumfer ^{er}	S. 88° E.
Time by Chronometer A.M.	8. 20. 25.
Altitude by Sextant	52°. 20'. 45".
☉'s Magnetic Azimuth by Circumferenter	S. 87° E.
Time by Chronometer	8. 25'. 22".
Altitude by Sextant	53°. 55'. 30".

Observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant.

A.M. 8. 30. 11.	P.M. the P.M. observation
" 31. 52. 5	was lost in consequence
" 33. 31.	of the Clouds.

Alt ^d by Sextant at the time of observation	55°. 28'. 45".
Observed Meridian altitude of the ☉'s U. L.	
with Octant by the back observation	81°. 25'. 15".
Latitude deduced from this observation	[blank space in MS.]

Remarks.

The artifl Horizon recommended by M^r A. Ellicott, in which water forms the reflecting surface, is used in all observations which requires the the uce of an Artificial horizon, except when expressly mentioned to the contrary.

The altitude of any object in the fore observation as here entered is

that deduced immediately from the graduated limb of the instrument, and is of course the double altitudes of the object observed.

The altitudes of objects observed by the back observation, with Octant as here entered, is that shewn by the graduated limb of the Instrument at the time of observation, and is the compliment of 180° of the double altitude of the object observed.

Error of Sextant — Subtractive	$^{\circ}$.	8'	45''.
Error of Octant fore observation —	2°	'.	''x
Error of d° in back observation add ^{ve}	2°	40'	- .x

The night proved so cloudy that I could make no further observations.

George Drewyer shot a Beaver this morning, which we found swimming in the river a small distance below the entrance of the little Missouri. the beaver being seen in the day, is a proof that they have been but little hunted, as they always keep themselves closely concealed during the day where they are so. found a great quantity of small onions in the plain where we encamped; had some of them collected and cooked, found them agreeable. the bulb grows single, is of an oval form, white, and about the size of a small bullet; the leaf resemble[s] that of the shive, and the hunters returned this ev[en]-ing with one deer only. the country about the mouth of this river had been recently hunted by the Minetares, and the little game which they had not killed and frightened away, was so extremely shy that the hunters could not get in shoot of them.

The little Missouri disembogues on the S. side of the Missouri 1693 miles from the confluence of the latter with the Mississippi, it is 134 yards wide at it's mouth, and sets in with a bould current but it's greatest debth is not more than $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet. it's navigation is extremely difficult, owing to it's rapidity, shoals and sand bars it may however be navigated with small canoes a considerable distance. this river passes through the Nothern extremity of the black hills where it is very narrow and rapid and it's banks high an[d] perpendicular. it takes it's rise in a broken country West of the Black hills with the waters of the yellow stone river, and a considerable distance S.W. of the point at which it passes the black hills. the country through which it passes is generally broken and the highlands possess but little timber. there is some timber in it's bottom lands,

which consists of Cottonwood red Elm, with a small proportion of small Ash and box alder. the under brush is willow, red wood, (sometimes called red or swamp willow¹) the red burry, and Choke cherry the country is extremely broken about the mouth of this river, and as far up on both sides, as we could observe it from the tops of some elevated hills, which stand between these two rivers, about 3 miles from their junction. the soil appears fertile and deep, it consists generally of a dark rich loam intermixed with a small proportion of fine sand. this river in it's course passes near the N.W. side of the turtle mountain, which is said to be no more than 4 or 5 leagues distant from it's entrance in a straight direction, a little to the S. of West. this mountain and the knife river have therefore been laid down too far S.W. the colour of the water, the bed of the river, and it's appearance in every respect, resembles the Missouri; I am therefore induced to believe that the texture of the soil of the country in which it takes it's rise, and that through which it passes, is similar to the country through which the Missouri passes after leaving the woody country, or such as we are now in. on the side of a hill not distant from our camp I found some of the dwarf cedar of which I preserved a specimen (See N^o 2.) this plant spreads it's limbs along the surface of the earth, where they are sometimes covered, and always put forth a number of roots on the under side, while on the upper there are a great number of small shoots which with their leaves seldom rise higher than 6 or eight inches. they grow so close as perfectly to conceal the ea[r]th. it is an evergreen; the leaf is much more delicate than the common Cedar, and it's taste and smell the same. I have often thought that this plant would make very handsome edgings to the borders and walks of a garden; it is quite as handsom as box, and would be much more easily propagated. the appearance of the glauber salts and Carbonated wood still continue.

Cou[r]se and distance of this day was.

N. 80° W. to the entrance of the little Missouri — 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ ^m

¹ This is not a willow, but a cornel (*Cornus stolonifera*); its bark is used in the preparation of kinnikinnick. — ED.

[Clark:]

12th April Friday 1805

a fine morning Set out verry early. the murcury stood 56° above 0. proceeded on to the mouth of the Little Missouri river and formed a camp in a butifull elivated plain on the lower side for the purpose of takeing Some observations to fix the Latitude & Longitude of this river. this river falls in on the L. Side and is 134 yards wide and 2 feet 6 Inches deep at the mouth, it takes its rise in the N W extremity of the black mountains, and [runs] through a broken countrey in its whole course washing the N W base of the Turtle Mountain which is Situated about 6 Leagues S W of its mouth, one of our men Baptist who came down this river in a canoe informs me that it is not navigable, he was 45 days descending.

One of our men Shot a beaver swimming below the mouth of this river.

I walked out on the lower Side of this river and found the countrey hilly the soil composed of black mole & a small perportion of sand containing great quantity of Small peable some limestone, black flint, & sand Stone

I killed a Hare changinge its colour some parts retaining its long white fur & other parts assumeing the short grey, I saw the Magpie in pars, flocks of Grouse. the old field lark & crows, & observed the leaf of the wild chery half grown, many flowers are to be seen in the plains, remains of Mine-tarra & Ossinneboin hunting camps are to be seen on each side of the two Missouris

The wind blew verry hard from the S. all the after part of the day, at 3 oClock PM. it became violent & blowey accompanied with thunder and a little rain. We examined our canoes &c found Several men which had already commenced cutting our bags of corn & parched meal, the water of the little Missouri is of the same texture colour & quality of that of the Big Missouri the after part of the day so cloudy that we lost the evening observation.

Course & Distance of the 12th

N. 80° W. 4½ miles to the mouth of the Little Missouri River on the S.S.



IDOLS OF THE MANDAN INDIANS

[Lewis:]

Saturday April 13th

Being disappointed in my observations of yesterday for Longitude, I was unwilling to remain at the entrance of the river another day for that purpose, and therefore determined to set out early this morning; which we did accordingly; the wind was in our favour after 9 A.M. and continued favourable untill three 3. P. M. we therefore hoisted both the sails in the White Perogue, consisting of a small squar sail, and spritsail, which carried her at a pretty good gate, untill about 2 in the afternoon when a suddon squall of wind struck us and turned the perogue so much on the side as to allarm Sharbono who was steering at the time, in this state of alarm he threw the perogue with her side to the wind, when the spritsail gibing was as near overseting the perogue as it was possible to have missed. the wind however abating for an instant I ordered Dreyer to the helm and the sails to be taken in, which was instant[ly] executed and the perogue being steered before the wind was agin plased in a state of security. this accedent was very near costing us dearly. beleiving this vessell to be the most steady and safe, we had embarked on board of it our instruments, Papers, medicine and the most valuable part of the merchandize which we had still in reserve as presents for the Indians. we had also embarked on board ourselves, with three men who could not swim and the squaw with the young child, all of whom, had the perogue overset, would most probably have perished, as the waves were high, and the perogue upwards of 200 yards from the nearest shore; however we fortunately escaped and pursued our journey under the square sail, which shortly after the accident I directed to be again hoisted. our party caught three beaver last evening; and the French hunters 7. as there was much appearance of beaver just above the entrance of the little Missouri these hunters concluded to remain some days, we therefore left them without the expectation of seeing them again. just above the entrance of the little Missouri the great Missouri is upwards of a mile in width, tho' immediately at the entrance of the former it is not more than 200 yards wide and so shallow that the canoes passed it with seting poles. at the distance of nine miles passed

the mouth of a creek on the Star^d side which we called onion creek from the quantity of wild onions which grow in the plains on it's borders. Capt. Clark who was on shore informed me that this creek was 16 yards wide a mile & a half above it's entrance, discharges more water than creeks of it's size usually do in this open country, and that there was not a stick of timber of any discription to be seen on it's borders, or the level plain country through which it passes. at the distance of 10 Miles further we passed the mouth of a large creek, discharging itself in the center of a deep bend. of this creek and the neighbouring country, Capt. Clark who was on shore gave me the following discription. "This creek I took to be a small river from it's size, and the quantity of water which it discharged; I ascended it $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and found it the discharge of a pond or small lake, which had the appearance of having formerly been the bed of the Missouri. several small streams discharge themselves into this lake. the country on both sides consists of beautifull level and elivated plains; ascending as they recede from the Missouri; there were a great number of Swan and gees in this lake and near it's borders I saw the remains of 43, temperary Indian lodges, which I presume were those of the Assinniboins who are now in the neighbourhood of the British establishments on the Assinniboin river" This lake and it's discharge we call *goos* Egg from the circumstance of Capt. Clark shooting a goose while on her nest in the top of a lofty cotton wood tree, from which we afterwards took one egg. the wild gees frequently build their nests in this manner, at least we have already found several in trees, nor have we as yet seen any on the ground, or sand bars where I had supposed from previous information that they most commonly deposited their eggs. saw some Buffaloe and Elk at a distance to-day but killed none of them. we found a number of carcasses of the Buffaloe lying along shore, which had been drowned by falling through the ice in winter and lodged on shore by the high water when the river broke up about the first of this month. we saw also many tracks of the white bear of enormous size, along the river shore and about the carcasses of the Buffaloe, on which I presume they feed. we have not

as yet seen one of these animals, tho' their tracks are so abundant and recent. the men as well as ourselves are anxious to meet with some of these bears. the Indians give a very formidable account of the strength and ferocity of this animal, which they never dare to attack but in parties of six eight or ten persons; and are even then frequently defeated with the loss of one or more of their party. the savages attack this animal with their bows and arrows and the indifferent guns with which the traders furnish them, with these they shoot with such uncertainty and at so short a distance, that (*unless shot thro' head or heart wound not mortal*) they frequently miss their aim & fall a sacrifice to the bear. two Minetaries were killed during the last winter in an attack on a white bear. this animal is said more frequently to attack a man on meeting with him, than to flee from him. When the Indians are about to go in quest of the white bear, previous to their departure, they paint themselves and perform all those superstitious rights commonly observed when they are about to make war upon a neighbouring nation. Observed more bald eagles on this part of the Missouri than we have previously seen. saw the small hawk, frequently called the sparrow hawk, which is common to most parts of the U. States. great quantities of geese are seen feeding in the praries. saw a large flock of white brant or geese with black wings pass up the river; there were a number of gray brant with them; from their flight I presume they proceed much further still to the N.W. we have never been enabled yet to shoot one of these birds, and cannot therefore determine whether the gray brant found with the white, are their brude of the last year or whether they are the same with the grey brant common to the Mississippi and lower part of the Missouri. we killed 2 antelopes to-day which we found swimming from the S. to the N. side of the river; they were very poor. We encamped this evening on the Star^d shore in a beautiful plain, elevated about 30 feet above the river.

The courses and distances of this day are as follow.		miles.
N. 18° W.	to a point of wood on the L. side, point on the Lar ^d at 1½ miles	7½
N. 10. W.	to the upper point of a Low bluff on the Sta ^d pass a creek on Star ^d side.	5
N. 45. W.	to a point of Woodland on Lar ^d side	4.
N. 28. W.	to a point of Woodland Star ^d side	3.
S. 35. W.	to a point of Woodland on St ^d side, passed a creek on Star ^d side - near the commencement of this course also, two points on the Lar ^d side, the one at a mile, and the other ½ a mile further, also a large sand bar in the river above the entrance of the creek	4.
		<u>23½</u>

Note our encampment was one mile short of the extremity of the last course. —

[Clark:]

13th of April Saturday 1805

Set out this morning at 6oClock, the Missouri above the mouth of Little Missouri widens to nearly a mile containing a number of Sand bars this width &c. of the River continues Generally as high as the Rochejhone River. Cought 3 beaver this morning, at 9 miles passed the mouth of a Creek on the S.S. on the banks of which there is an imense quantity of wild onions or garlick, I was up this Creek ½ a m[ile] and could not See one Stick of timber of any kind on its borders, this creek is 16 yds wide ½ a mile up it and discharges more water than is common for Creeks of its Size. at about 10 miles higher we pass a creek about 30 yards wide in a deep bend to the N W. This creek I took to be a Small river from its size & the quantity of water which it discharged, I assended it 1½ miles and found it the discharge of a pond or Small Lake which has appearance of haveing been once the bead of the river. Some small streams discharge themselves into this Lake. the country on both sides is butifull elevated plains assending in Some parts to a great distance near the aforesaid Lake (what we call Goose egg L from a circumstance of my shooting a goose on her neast on some sticks in the top of a

high cotton wood tree in which there was one egg) We saw 8 buffalo at a distance which were very wild, I saw near the Lake the remains of 43 lodges, which has latterly been abandoned I suppose them to have been Ossinniboins and now near the british establishments on the Ossinniboin River trading. we camped on the S.S. in a butifull Plain. I observe more bald Eagles on this part of the Missouri than usial also a small Hawk Killed 2 Antelopes in the river to day.

Course distance &c the 13th of April 1805

- N. 18° W. 7½ miles to a point of wood on the L.S. passed a point on the L.S. at 1½ miles
 N. 10° W. 5 miles to the upper point of a low bluff on the S.S. passed a creek on the S.S. (1)
 N. 45° W. 4 miles to a point of woodland on L.S.
 N. 28° W. 3 miles to a point of woodland on S.S. the river making a Deep bend to the N.W.
 S 35° W. 4 miles to a point of wood on the S. S. passed a creek (2) on the S.S. near the commencement of this course, also two points on the L.S one at a mile & the other ½ a mile further, also a large sand bar in the middle of the river above the mouth of the creek

emence numbers of Geese to be seen pared &c a Gange of brant pass one half of the gange white with black wings or the large feathers of the 1st & 2^d joint the remd^s of the com[mo]n col[o]r. a voice much like that of a goos & finer &c.

[Lewis:]

Sunday April 14th 1805.

One of the hunters saw an Otter last evening and shot at it, but missed it. a dog came to us this morning, which we supposed to have been lost by the Indians who were recently encamped near the lake that we passed yesterday. the mineral appearances of salts, coal and sulphur, together with birnt hills & pumice stone still continue. while we remained at the entrance of the little Missouri, we saw several pieces of pumice stone floating down that stream, a considerable quant[it]y of

which had lodged against a point of drift wood a little above it's entrance. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and on his return informed me that he had passed through the timbered bottoms on the N. side of the river, and had extended his walk several miles back on the hills; in the bottom lands he had met with several uninhabited Indian lodges built with the boughs of the Elm, and in the plains he met with the remains of two large encampments of a recent date, which from the appearance of some hoops of small kegs, seen near them we concluded that they must have been the camps of the Assinniboins, as no other nation who visit this part of the missouri ever indulge themselves with spirituous liquor. of this article the Assinniboins are pationately fond, and we are informed that it, forms their principal inducement to furnish the British establishments on the Assinniboine river with the dried and pounded meat and grease which they do. they also supply those establishments with a small quantity of fur, consisting principally of the large and small wolves and the small fox¹ skins. these they barter for small kegs of rum which they generally transport to their camps at a distance from the establishments, where they revel with their friends and relations as long as they possess the means of intoxication, their women and children are equally indulged on those occasions and are all seen drunk together. so far is a state of intoxication from being a cause of reproach among them, that with the men, it is a matter of exultation that their skill and industry as hunters has enabled them to get drunk frequently. in their customs, habits and dispositions these people very much resemble the Siouxs from whom they have descended. The principal inducement with the British fur companies, for continuing their establishments on the Assinniboine river, is the Buffaloe meat and grease they procure from the Assinniboins, and Christianoes, by means of which, they are enabled to supply provision to their engages on their return from rainy Lake to the English river and the Athabasky country where they winter; without such resource those voyagers

¹ The kit fox (*Vulpes velox*). — Ed.

we had a fair wind today, which enabled us to ^{take} the greater part of the distance, we have traversed, unimpeded on the land shore, the extremity of the eastern coast and distance of the 17th.

- S. 70 W. to a point of millies on the Star side. — 3. —
 S. 75 W. along the Star point, opposite to a bluff — $\sim \frac{1}{2}$
 N. 75 W. to a wood in a bend on the Star side — 3. —
 N. 59 W. to a point of woodland Star side. — 3 $\frac{1}{2}$.
 S. 60 W. to a point of woodland on Star side }
 opposite to a bluff on Land, just above } $\sim \frac{3}{4}$
 which, a creek falls in on the land. }
 about 10 yards wide.
 N. 80 W. to a millies point on the Land side. — 3 $\frac{1}{4}$
 S. 85 W. to a point of woodland Land, opposite }
 to a bluff on Star side. — } 3 $\frac{3}{4}$
 West. along the Land point, opposite to a }
 high bluff above which a small river } 1. —
 falls in — }
 S. 40 W. along the same point of woodland } 1
 Land side. — }
 S. 20 W. along the Land side to a millies point — $\frac{1}{4}$
 S. 14 W. to the upper part of the the high ling }
 -ber on the Star side — } 1. —
 S. 28 W. to a point of woodland on the Land }
 side where we encamped for the night } 2

Miles 26.

Thursday April 18th 1805.

A fine morning, set out at an early hour. one Beaver caught this morning by two traps, having a foot in each; the traps belonged to different individuals, between whom, a contest ensued, which would have terminated, most probably, in a serious encounter had it not been for the timely appearance of the first of the two.

would frequently be straitened for provision, as the country through which they pass is but scantily supplied with game, and the rapidity with which they are compelled to travel in order to reach their winter stations, would leave them but little leasure to surch for food while on their voyage.

The Assiniboins have so recently left this neighbourhood, that the game is scarce and very shy. the river continues wide, and not more rapid than the Ohio in an averge state of it's current. the bottoms are wide and low, the moister parts containing some timber; the upland is extremely broken, chonsisting of high gaulded nobs as far as the eye can reach on ether side, and entirely destitute of timber. on these hills many aromatic herbs are seen; resembling in taste, smel and appearance, the sage, hysop, wormwood, southernwood,¹ and two other herbs which are strangers to me; the one resembling the camphor in taste and smell, rising to the hight of 2 or 3 feet; the other about the same size, has a long, narrow, smo[o]th, soft leaf of an agreeable smel and flavor; of this last the A[n]telope is very fond; they feed on it, and perfume the hair of their foreheads and necks with it by rubbing against it. the dwarf cedar and juniper is also found in great abundance on the sides of these hills. where the land is level, it is uniformly fertile consisting of a dark loam intermixed with a proportion of fine sand. it is generally covered with a short grass resembling very much the blue grass. the miniral appearances still continue; considerable quantities of bitumenous water, about the colour of strong lye trickles down the sides of the hills; this water partakes of the taste of glauber salts and slightly of allumn. while the party halted to take dinner today Capt. Clark killed a buffaloe bull; it was meagre, and we therefore took the marrow bones and a small proportion of the meat only. near the place we dined, on the Lard. side, there was a large village of burrowing squirrels. I have remarked that these anamals generally select a South Easterly exposure for their residence, tho' they are sometimes found in

¹ Probably the common sage-brush (*Artemisia tridentata*), which Lewis is comparing to all these garden herbs which he names. The identity of the two other plants is not plain. — ED.

the level plains. passed an Island, above which two small creeks fall in on Lar^d side; the upper creek largest, which we called Sharbono's Creek, after our interpreter who encamped several weeks on it with a hunting party of Indians. this was the highest point to which any whiteman had ever ascended, except two Frenchmen (*one of whom Lapage was now with us. See at Mandan*) who having lost their way had straggled a few miles further, tho' to what place precisely I could not learn.¹ I walked on shore above this creek and killed an Elk, which was so poor that it was unfit for uce; I therefore left it, and joined the party at their encampment on the Star^d shore a little after dark. on my arrival Capt. Clark informed me that he had seen two white bear pass over the hills shortly after I fired, and that they appeared to run nearly from the place where I shot. the lar^d shore on which I walked was very broken, and the hills in many places had the appearance of having slipped down in masses of several acres of land in surface. we saw many gees feeding on the tender grass in the praries and several of their nests in the trees; we have not in a single instance found the nest of this bird on or near the ground. we saw a number of Magpies their nests and eggs. their nests are built in trees and composed of small sticks leaves and grass, open at top, and much in the stile of the large blackbird comm to the U.'States. the egg is of a bluish brown colour, freckled with redish brown spots. one of the party killed a large hooting owl; I observed no difference between this bird and those of the same family common to the U.'States, except that this appeared to be more booted and more thickly clad with feathers.

¹ Lewis and Clark here distinctly state that they have now passed beyond the highest point on the Missouri heretofore explored by white men. Chaboneau had been as far as the creek named for him (probably Indian Creek of to-day), and Lepage, another recruit from the Mandan towns, had, with one other Frenchman, gone a few miles farther; but beyond that they were entering virgin territory. This is important, for it shows that the quest for furs had not yet been pushed appreciably west of the Mandan villages by the British fur companies. — O. D. WHEELER.

The courses and distances of the 14th April.

	Miles
S. 45. W. to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a timbered bottom	2 ¹ / ₂
W. - to a point of Woodland on the Lar ^d side	3 ¹ / ₂
N. 85. W. to a point on the Star ^d opposite to a bluff	2
N. 80. W. to a point on Star ^d opposite to a bluff on La ^d	1 ³ / ₄
W. to the lower point of an Island which from the circumstance of our arriving at it on Sunday we called Sunday Island. the river washes the base of the hills on both sides of this Island	1
N. 70. W. to a point of woodland on the Star ^d Side the Island and it's sandbar occupy ¹ / ₂ the distance of this course pass two small creeks on the Lar ^d Side, the upper one the largest, called Sharbono's creek.	3 ¹ / ₄
	Miles <u>14</u>

Point of Observation N^o 2.

On the Star^d shore ¹/₄ of a mile above the extremity of the third course of this day observed Meridian Alt^d ☉^d L. L. with Octant by the back Ob^d 81° 34' " —

Latitude deduced from this Observat^o.

Point of Observation N^o 3.

At our encampment of this evening on the S^d S^{id} observed time and distance of ☽^s Western limb from Regulus, with Sextant. * West. —

Time. —		Distance. —		Time. —		Distance. —	
	^h ^m ^s	['] ["]		^h ^m ^s	['] ["]		['] ["]
P.M.	10. 47. 2	—	72. 20. 30.	P.M.	11. 2. 2.	—	72. 25. 45.
	" . 51. 10.	—	" . 21. -		" . 4. 27.	—	" . 27. 15.
	" . 53. 19.	—	" . 21. 45.		" . 7. 55.	—	" . 29. - .
	" . 56. 2.	—	" . 23. -		" . 10. 19.	—	" . 30. - .
	" . 58. 58.	—	" . 24. 15.		" . 12. 12.	—	" . 31. 15.

Observed time and distance of ☽^s Eastern limb from *a*. Aquile with Sextant. * East. —

Time.		Distance.		Time.		Distance.	
	^h ^m ^s	['] ["]		^h ^m ^s	['] ["]		['] ["]
P.M.	11. 22. 7.	—	82. 16. 45.	P.M.	11. 36. 47.	—	82. 14. 30.
	" . 27. 7.	—	" . 16. 15		" . 39. 34.	—	" . 14. -
	" . 30. 23.	—	" . 15. 30.		" . 43. 2.	—	" . 13. 15.
	" . 32. 27.	—	" . 15. 15.		" . 46. 8.	—	" . 13. 30.
	" . 34. 39.	—	" . 15. 15.		" . 48. 16.	—	" . 13. -

[Clark.]

14th of April Sunday 1805.

a fine morning, a dog came to us this morning we suppose him to be left by the Ind^s who had their camps near the Lake we passed yesterday not long sence, I observed several single Lodges built of stiks of [c]otten timber in different parts of the bottoms. in my walk of this [day] which was through the wooded bottoms and on the hills for several miles back from the river on the S.S. I saw the remains of two Indian incampments with wide beeten tracks leading to them. those were no doubt the camps of the Ossinnaboin Indians (a Strong evidence is hoops of Small Kegs were found in the incampments) no other nation on the river above the *Sioux* make use of Spiritious licquer. The Ossinniboins is said to be pasionately fond of Licquer, and is the principal inducement to their putting themselves to the trouble of catching the few wolves and foxes which they furnish, and receive their [liquor] always in small Kegs. The Ossinniboins make use of the Same kind of Lodges which the Sioux and other Indians on this river make use of. Those lodges or tents are made of a number of dressed buffalow Skins sowed together with sinews & dekerated with the tales, & Porcupine quils, when open it forms a half circle with a part about 4 Inches wide projecting about 8 or 9 Inches from the center of the Streight Side for the purpose of attaching it to a pole to it the hight they wish to raise the tent, when the [y] erect this tent four poles of equal length are tied near one end, those poles are elevated and 8, 10 or 12 other poles are anexed forming a circle at the ground and lodging in the forks of the four attached poles, the tents are then raised, by attaching the projecting part to a pole and incumpassing the poles with the tent by bringing the two ends together and attached with a cord, on land as high as is necessary, leaveing the lower part open for about 4 feet for to pass in & out, and the top is generally left open to admit the smoke to pass. The Borders of the river has been so much hunted by those Indians who must have left it about 8 or 10 days past and I presume are now in the neighbourhood of British establishments on the Ossinniboin; the game is scerce and verry wild.

The River continues wide and the current jentle not more rapid than the current of the Ohio in middle State. The bottoms are wide and low and the moist parts of them contain Som wood such as cotton Elm & small ash, willow rose bushes &c &c. & next to the hills Great quantity of wild Isoop, [byssop] the hills are high broken in every direction, and the mineral appearance of Salts continue to appear in a greater perportion, also Sulpher, coal & bitumous water in a smaller quantity, I have observed but five burnt hills, about the little Missouri, and I have not seen any Pumey stone above that River I saw Buffalow on the L.S. crossed and dureing the time of dinner killed a Bull, which was pore, we made use of the best of it, I saw a village of Burrowing dogs on the L. S. passed a Island above which two small creeks falls in on the L.S. the upper of which is the largest and we call Shabonas Creek after our interpreter who incamped several weeks on this creek and is the highest point on the Missouri to which a white man has been previous to this time. Cap^t Lewis walked out above this creek and killed an Elk which he found so meager that it was not fit for use, and joined the boat at Dusk at our camp on the S.S. opposit a high hill several parts of which had sliped down. on the side of those hills we Saw two white bear running from the report of Cap^t Lewis Shot, those animals assended those Steep hills with supprising ease & verlocity, they were too far to discover their prosire colour & size. Saw several gees nests on trees, also the nests & eggs of the Magpies, a large grey owl killed, booted & with ears &c.

Course distance &c the 14th of April

- S. 45° W. 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ miles to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a wood bottom in a bend to L.S.
 West 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ miles to a point of wood land on the L.S.
 N. 85° W. 2 miles to a point on the S. S. opposit a bluff
 N. 80° W. 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ m^l to a point on S. S. pass^d a bluff on the L. S.
 West 1 mile to a small Island ops^d the upper point the river washes the base of the hill on both sides, which we call Sunday Isl^d &c
 N. 70° W. 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ miles to a p^t of wood land on the S.S. the Island & its sand bars Occupy half the distance. passed 2 small creeks on the L.S. the upper the largest.

[Lewis:]

Monday April 15th 1805.

Set out at an early hour this morning. I walked on shore, and Capt. Clark continued with the party it being an invariable rule with us not to be both absent from our vessels at the same time. I passed through the bottoms of the river on the Star^d side. they were partially covered with timber, were extensive, level and beatifull. in my walk which was about 6 miles I passed a small rivulet of clear water making down from the hills, which on tasting, I discovered to be in a small degree brackish. it possessed less of the glauber salt, or alumn, than those little streams from the hills usually do. in a little pond of water formed by this rivulet where it entered the bottom, I heard the frogs crying for the first time this season; their note was the same with that of the small frogs which are common to the lagoons and swam[p]s of the U. States. I saw great quantities of gees feeding in the bottoms, of which I shot one. saw some deer and Elk, but they were remarkably shy. I also met with great numbers of Grouse or *prarie hens* as they are called by the English traders of the N.W. these birds appeared to be mating; the note of the male, is kuck, kuck, kuck, coo, coo, coo. the first part of the note both male and female use when flying. the male also dubb (*drums with his wings*) something like the pheasant, but by no means as loud. After breakfast Capt. Clark walked on the St^d shore, and on his return in the evening gave me the following account of his ramble. "I assended to the high country, about 9 miles distant from the Missouri. the country consists of beatifull, level and fertile plains, destitute of timber. I saw many little dranes, which took their rise in the river hills, from whence as far as I could see they run to the N. E." these streams we suppose to be the waters of Mous river a branch of the Assiniboin which the Indians informed us approaches the Missouri very nearly, about this point. "I passed," continued he, a Creek about 20 yards wide, which falls into the Missouri; the bottoms of this creek are wide level and extremely fertile, but almost entirely destitute of timber. the water of this creek as well as all those creeks and rivulets which we have passed since we left Fort Mandan was so strongly impregnated with

salts and other mineral substances that I was incapable of drinking it. I saw the remains of several camps of the Assiniboin; near one of which in a small ravine, there was a park which they had formed of timber and brush, for the purpose of taking the *cabrie*¹ or Antelope. it was constructed in the following manner. a strong pound was first made of timbers, on one side of which there was a small appature, sufficiently large to admit an Antelope; from each side of this appature, a curtain was extended to a considerable distance, widening as they receded from the pound." we passed a rock this evening standing in the middle of the river, and the bed of the river was formed principally of gravel. we encamped this evening on a sand point on Lar^d side. a little above our encampment the river was confined to a channel of 80 yards in width.

Courses and distances of the 15 th April.		miles.
N.	to a point of wood on Lar ^d side, opposite to a high hill	2.
N. 18. W.	to a point of wood on the Star ^d side opposite to the lower point of an Island in a Lar ^d bend of the river	5.
N. 20. E.	to a bluff point on Star ^d passed the upper part of the Island at 2 Miles	3 1/4
N. 30. E.	to a point of woodland on Lar ^d side.	2 1/2
N. 10. W.	on the Lar ^d point	1/2
N. 15. W.	on the Lar ^d point	1/4
N. 12. W.	to the lower part of a bluff on the Sta ^d side, passing a creek on Star ^d	1 1/2
N. 52. W.	to a high bluff on the Sta ^d side	2.
N. 75. W.	to a point of woodland on the Star ^d Si ^d	3.
N. 16. W.	to a point of Woodland on Lar ^d side	3.
		<hr/> miles 23.

Point of Observation N^o 4.

Apl. 15th 1805. On the Sta^d shore, one mile above the extremity of the 2^d course of this day, I took two altitudes of the sun with the Sextant and artificial horizon.

A. M.	Time			Altitudes.	
	h	m	s.	'	"
	9.	9.	33	69.	20. 45.
	10.	3.	28.	84.	24. 15.

Chronometer to fast at the time of observation on mean time.

¹ A common name for the American antelope; corrupted from Spanish *cabra*, "goat." — Ed.

[Clark:]

15th of April Monday 1805

Set out at an early hour, Cap^t Lewis walked on shore and Killed a goose, passed a Island in a bend to the L.S. the wind hard from the S.E. after brackfast I walked on Shore and assended to the high Countrey on the S.S. and off from the Missouri about three miles the countrey is butifull open fertile plain the dreans [drains] take their rise near the clifts of the river and run from the river in a N E derection as far as I could See, this is the part of the River which Mouse river the waters of Lake Winnipeg approaches within a few miles of Missouri, and I believe those dreans lead into that river. we passed a creek about 20 yd^s wide on the S.S. the bottoms of this creek is extensive & fertile, the water of this as also, all the Streams which head a few miles in the hills discharge water which is black & unfit for use (and can safely say that I have not seen one drop of water fit for use above fort Mandan except Knife and the little Missouri Rivers and the Missouri, the other Streams being so much impregnated with mineral as to be very disagreeble in its present state. I saw the remains of Several camps of ossinniboins, near one of those camps & at no great distance from the mouth of the aforesaid creek, in a hollow, I saw a large Strong pen made for the purpose of catching the antelope, with wings projecting from it widening from the pen.

Saw several gangs of Buffalow and som elk at a distance, a black bear seen from the Perogues to day. passed a rock in the Middle of the river, some smaller rocks from that to the L. Shore, the dog that came to us yesterday morning continues to follow us, we camped on a sand point to the L.S.

Course distance &^c he 15th of April

North	2	m.	to a p ^t of wood on the L ^d Si ^d	a high hill on the S ^d Si ^d
N. 18° W.	5	miles	to a point of wood on the S ^d Si ^d	op ^o the lower point of an Island L. Bend
N. 20° E.	3 $\frac{1}{4}$	miles	to a Bluff point on the S ^d Si ^d	passed the upper part of the Island at 2 miles
N. 30° E.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	miles	to a point of woodland on the L. Side	
N. 10° .W	$\frac{1}{2}$	a mile	on the La ^d point	

[314]

N. 15° W.	$\frac{1}{4}$	of a mile on the L. p ^t here the waters of Mouse river is near
N. 12° W.	$1\frac{1}{2}$	miles to the lower part of a Bluff on the S ^d Side passing a creek on the S. Side. Goat pen creek
N. 52° W.	2	miles to a high Bluff on the S ^d Side
N. 75° W.	3	miles to a p ^t of woodland on the S. Side
N. 16° W.	3	miles to a point of woods on the L. S.
	<u>23</u>	

[Lewis:]

Tuesday April 16th 1805

Set out very early this morning. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and killed an Antelope, rejoined us at $\frac{1}{2}$ after eight A.M. he informed me that he had seen many Buffaloe Elk and deer in his absence, and that he had met with a great number of old hornets nests in the woody bottoms through which he had passed. the hills of the river still continue extremely broken for a few miles back, when it becomes a fine level country of open fertile lands. immediately on the river there are many fine level extensive and extremely fertile high plains and meadows. I think the quantity of timbered land on the river is increasing. the mineral appearances still continue. I met with several stones today that had the appearance of wood first carbonated and then petrefyed by the water of the river, which I have discovered has that effect on many vegetable substances when exposed to it's influence for a length of time. I believe it to be the stratas of coal seen in those hills which causes the fire and birnt appearances frequently met with in this quarter. where those birnt appearances are to be seen in the face of the river bluffs, the coal is seldom seen, and when you meet with it in the neighbourhood of the stratas of birnt earth, the coal appears to be presisely at the same hight, and is nearly of the same thickness, togeter with the sand and a sulphurious substance which usually accompanys it. there was a remarkable large beaver caught by one of the party last night. these anamals are now very abundant. I have met with several trees which have been felled by them 20 Inches in diameter. bark is their only food ; and they appear to prefer that of the Cotton wood and willow ;

as we have never met with any other species of timber on the Missouri which had the appearance of being cut by them. we passed three small creeks on the Star^d side. they take their rise in the river hills at no great distance. we saw a great number of geese today, both in the plains and on the river. I have observed but few ducks, those we have met with are the Mallard and blue winged Teal.

Courses and distances of 16th April.

S. 80. W. to a point of woodland on the Star ^d side	3.
N. 36. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side.	2½
S. 60. W. to a point of wood on the Sta ^d side, opposite to a bluff which commences 1 mile below on the Lar ^d side	3½
N. 25. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side	2½
S. 70. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side, passing a point of wood and large sand bar on the Star ^d side	6.
S. 65. W. along the Lar ^d point of woods to our encampment of this evening	½
	Miles 18.

Note. The distances we are obliged to pass around the sand bars is much greater than those here stated from point to point.

[Clark:]

16th of April Tuesday 1805

Wind hard from the S. E. I walked on shore and Killed an antelope which was verry meagre, Saw Great numbers of Elk & some buffalow & Deer, a verry large Beaver cought this morning. Some verry handsom high planes & extensive bottoms, The mineral appearances of coal & Salt together with some appearance of Burnt hil[]s continue. a number of old hornets nests Seen in every bottom more perticularly in the one opposit to the place we camped this night. the wooded bottoms are more extensive to day than Common. passed three small creeks on the S. S. to day which take their rise in the hills at no great distance, Great numbers of Gees in the river & in the Plains feeding on the Grass.

Course Distance &c April 16th

- S. 80° W. 3 miles to a point of wood land on the S^d Side.
 N. 36° W. 2½ miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side
 S. 60° W. 3½ miles to a point of wood on the S^d Side ops^d a bluff
 which commences 1 mile below on the Larboard Side.
 N. 25° W. 2½ miles to a p^t of wood land on the L. Side.
 S. 70° W. 6 miles to a point of Wood land on the L. Side, passing
 a point of wood land on the S^d Side, passing a large
 Sand bar S^d
 S. 65° W. ½ a mile along the L. Point of wood.

18

[Lewis:]

Wednesday April 17th 1805.

A delightful morning, set out at an early hour. the country th[r]ough which we passed to day was much the same as that discribed of yesterday; there wase more appearance of birnt hills, furnishing large quanties of lava and pumice stone; of the latter some pieces were seen floating down the river. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning on the Star^d side, and did not join us untill half after six in the evening. he informed me that he had seen the remains of the Assiniboin encampments in every point of woodland through which he had passed. we saw immense quantities of game in every direction around us as we passed up the river; consisting of herds of Buffaloe, Elk, and Antelopes with some deer and woolves. tho' we continue to see many tracks of the bear we have seen but very few of them, and those are at a great distance generally runing from us; I the[re]fore presume that they are extreemly wary and shy; the Indian account of them dose not corrispond with our experience so far. one black bear passed near the perogues on the 16th and was seen by myself and the party but he so quickly disappeared that we did not shoot at him. at the place we halted to dine on the Lar^d side we met with a herd of buffaloe of which I killed the fatest as I concieved among them, however on examining it I found it so poar that I thought it unfit for uce and only took the tongue; the party killed another which was still more lean. just before we encamped this evening we saw

[317]

some tracks of Indians who had passed about 24 hours; they left four rafts of tim[ber] on the Star^d side, on which they had passed. we supposed them to have been a party of the Assinniboins who had been to war against the rocky Mountain Indians, and then on their return. Capt. Clark saw a Curlou to-day. there were three beaver taken this morning by the party. the men prefer the flesh of this animal, to that of any other which we have, or are able to procure at this moment. I eat very heartily of the beaver myself, and think it excellent; particularly the tale, and liver we had a fair wind today which enabled us to sail the greater part of the distance we have travled, encamped on the Lar^d shore the extremity of the last course.

Courses and distances of the 17th

S. 70. W. to a point of willows on the Star ^d side	3.
S. 75. W. along the Star ^d point, opposite to a bluff	$\frac{1}{2}$.
N. 75. W. to a wood in a bend on the S ^d side	3.
N. 50. W. to a point of woodland Star ^d side	$3\frac{1}{2}$.
S. 60. W. to a point of woodland on Star ^d side opposite to a bluff on Lard, just above which, a creek falls in on the Lar ^d about 10 yards wide.	$.3\frac{1}{4}$
N. 80. W. to a willow point on the Lar ^d side.	$3\frac{1}{4}$
S. 85. W. to a point of woodland Lar ^d opposite to a bluff on Star ^d side	$3\frac{3}{4}$
West. Along the Lar ^d point, opposite to a high bluff above which a small run falls in	1.
S. 40. W. along the same point of woodland Lar ^d side.	1
S. 30. W. along the Lar ^d side to a willow point	$.1\frac{1}{4}$
S. 14. W. to the upper part of the high timber on the Star ^d side	4.
S. 28. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side where we encamped for the night	$\frac{2}{2}$
	Miles $\frac{2}{26}$

[Clark:]

17th of April Wednesday 1805

a fine morning wind from the S E. Gen^{ly} to day handsom high extencive rich Plains on each side, the mineral appearances continue with greater appearances of coal, much greater appearance of the hills haveing been burnt, more Pumice Stone & Lava washed down to the bottoms and some Pumice

Stone floating in the river, I walked on the S.S. saw great numbers of Buffalo feeding in the Plains at a distance Cap^t Lewis killed 2 Buffalo buls which was near the water at the time of dincing, they were so pore as to be unfit for use. I saw Several Small parties of antelopes large herds of Elk, Some white wolves, and in a pond (formed on the S.S. by the Missouries changing its bead) I seen Swan, Gees, & different kinds of Ducks in great numbers also a Beaver house. Passed a small creek on the S.S. & several runs of water on each side, Saw the remains of Indian camps in every point of timbered land on the S.S. in the evining a thunder gust passed from the S W. without rain, about sunset saw some fresh Indians track and four rafts on the shore S.S. Those I prosume were Ossinniboins who had been on a war party against the Rocky Mountain Indians. Saw a curlow, some verry large beaver taken this morning. those animals are made use of as food and preferred by the party to any other at this season

Course distance &c 17th of April 1805

- S. 70° W. 3 miles to a point of willows on the S.S^d
 S. 75° W. ½ miles on the S^d Side opposid a Bluff
 N. 75° W. 3 miles to a wood in a bend to the S^d Side
 N. 50° W 3½ miles to a point of wood Land S^d Side
 S 60° W ¾ of a mile to a p^t of wood land on the S. S^d opposit to a Bluff on the L^d Side just above which a creek falls in on the Lab^d about 10 y^{ds} wide.
 N. 80° W. 3¼ miles to a willow point on the L. S^d a Lake & creek St^d Halls Strand lake
 S. 85° W. 3¾ miles to a L. p^t of wood land opposit to a bluff on the Starboard Side.
 West 1 mile along the L. p^t of wood land, a high bluff on the S.S. above which a run falls in burnt hills
 S. 40° W. 1 mile along the same point of wood land Lar^d S.
 S. 30° W. ¼ of a mile on the La^d Side of a willow point.
 S. 14° W. 4 miles to the upper part of a high timber on the Starboard Side.
 S. 28° W. 2 miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side where we
 m^{ls} 26 camped for the night.

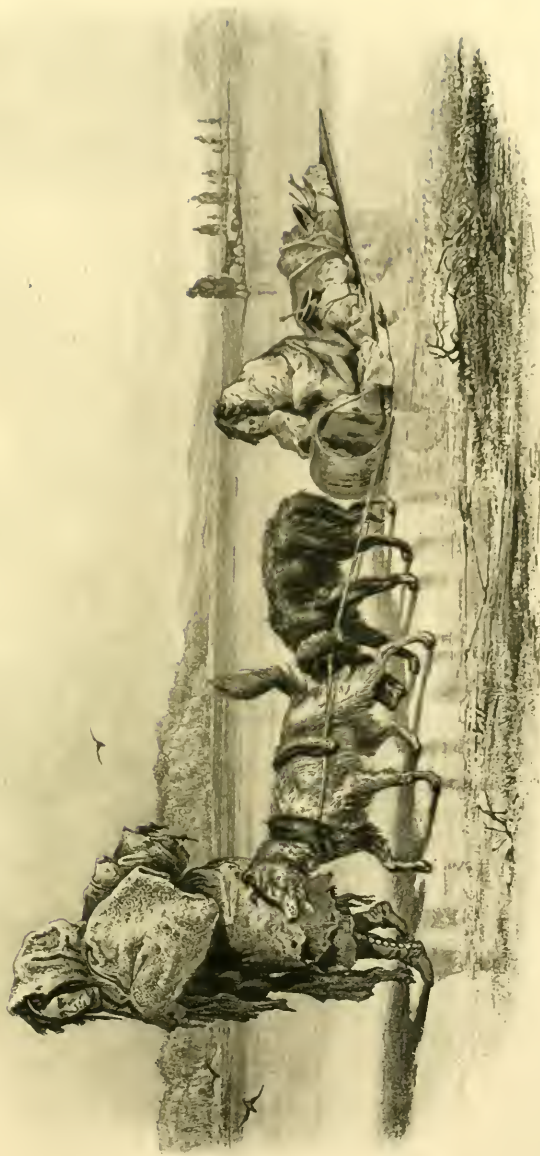
Note The distance we are obliged to go round sand bars &c is much greater than those called for in the courses from point to point &c

[Lewis:]

Thursday April 18th 1805.

A fine morning, set out at an early hour. one Beaver caught this morning by two traps, having a foot in each; the traps belonged to different individuals, between whom, a contest ensued, which would have terminated, most probably, in a serious rencounter had not our timely arrival at the place prevented it. after breakfast this morning, Capt. Clark walked on Sta^d shore. while the party were assending by means of their toe lines, I walked with them on the bank; found a species of pea bearing a yellow flower, and now in blume; it seldom rises more than 6 inches high, the leaf & stalk resembles that of the common gardin pea, the root is perenial. (see specimen of vegetables N^o 3.) I also saw several parsels of buffaloe's hair hanging on the rose bushes, which had been bleached by exposure to the weather and became perfectly white. it [had] every appearance of the wool of the sheep, tho' much finer and more silkey and soft. I am confident that an excellent cloth may be made of the wool of the Buffaloe. the Buffaloe I killed yesterday had cast his long hare, and the poil which remained was very thick, fine, and about 2 inches in length. I think this anamal would have furnished about five pounds of wool.¹ we were detained to-day from one to five P. M. in consequence of the wind which blew so violently from N. that it was with difficulty we could keep the canoes from filling with water altho' they were along shore; I had them secured by placing the perogues on the out side of them in such manner as to break the waves off them. at 5 we proceed, and shortly after met with Capt. Clark, who had killed an Elk and a deer and was wating our arrival. we took the meat on board and continued our march untill nearly dark when we came too on the Star^d side under a boald well-timbered bank which sheltered us from the wind

¹ When Jolliet first encountered the buffalo, he observed the possibility of using its wool — “with the wool of these oxen he could make cloth, much finer than most of that which we bring from France.” Marest says that the Illinois made from this hair various articles, as leggings, girdles, and pouches. See *Jes. Relations*, lviii, p. 107; lxvi, p. 231. Catlin recommends (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, p. 263) the utilization of the buffalo's hair for woollen manufactures. — ED.



DOG SLEDGES OF THE MANDAN INDIANS

which had abated but not yet ceased. here we encamped, it being the extremity of the last course of this day.

Courses and distances of the 18th April.

South	to a sand point on the Star ^d side	3.
N. 75.	W. to a point of Woodland on Lar ^d side	2. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 85.	W. along the Lar ^d point	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
S. 25.	E. to a sand point Star ^d side	2.
S. 60.	W. to a willow point Star ^d side	1.
S. 65.	W. along the Star ^d shore to a point of timbered land, opposite to a bluff on Lar ^d	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 25.	W. to a copse of wood on star ^d side, in a bend	2.
S. 50.	W. to a point of timbered land on Star ^d side where we encamped for the night	1 1 $\frac{1}{2}$
	Miles	13

Point of Observation N^o 5.

On the Star^d shore at the extremity of the fifth course of this day

Observed Meridian Alt^d of ☉'s L. L. with Octant by the back Observation 79° 12' 00''
 Latitude deduced from this observatⁿ

[Clark:]

18th of April Thursday 1805

Set out at an early hour one Beaver & a Muskrat caught this morning, the beaver caught in two traps, which like to have brought about a misunderstanding between two of the party &c. after brackfast I assended a hill and observed that the river made a great bend to the South, I concluded to walk thro' the point about 2 miles and take Shabono, with me, he had taken a dost of Salts &c. his squar followed on with her child, when I struck the next bend of the [river] could see nothing of the Party, left this man & his wife & child on the river bank and went out to hunt, Killed a young Buck Elk, & a Deer, the Elk was tolerable meat, the Deer very pore, Butchered the meat and continued untill near Sunset before Cap^t Lewis and the party came up, they were detained by the wind, which rose soon after I left the boat from the N W. & blew very hard untill very late in the evening. We camped

on the S.S. in an excellent harbor, Soon after we came too, two men went up the river to set their beaver traps they met with a Bear and being without their arms thought prudent to return &c. The wild cherries are in bloom, Great appearance of Burnt hills Pumice Stone &c. the coal & salt appearance continues, the water in the small runs much better than below. Saw several old Indian camps, the game, such as Buffalow Elk, antelopes & Deer verry plenty

Course distance &C. 18th of April

South	3	miles to a point on the St ^d Side
N. 75° W.	2 1/2	miles to a wood point on the L. Side
N. 85° W.	1/2	a mile along the La ^d Side
S. 25° E	2	miles to a sand point on the S ^d Side
S. 60° W.	1	mile to a p ^t of Willows on the S ^d Side
S. 65° W	1/2	mile along the S ^d po ^t to a point of timbered land ops ^d a Bluff on the La ^d Side
N. 25° W	2.	miles to a Copse of woods on the S ^d Side
S. 50° W.	1 1/2	miles to the upper part of a wood on the Sta ^d Side
miles	13	& camped

[Lewis:]

Friday April 19th. 1805.

The wind blew so hard this morning from N.W. that we dared not to venture our canoes on the river. Observed considerable quantities of dwarf Juniper on the hill sides (see specimen N^o 4)¹ it seldom rises higher then 3 feet. the wind detained us through the couse of this day, tho' we were fortunate in having placed ourselves in a safe harbour. the party killed one Elk and a beaver today. The beaver of this part of the Missouri are larger, fatter, more abundant and better clad with fur than those of any other part of the country that I have yet seen; I have remarked also that their fur is much darker.

[Clark:]

19th of April Friday 1805

a blustering windey day the wind so hard from the N.W. that we were fearfull of ventering our Canoes in the river, lay by all day on the S. Side in a good harber, the Praries appear

¹ This should be No. 104. See "Scientific Data: Botany," in vol. vi, *post.* — Ed.

to Green, the cotton trees begin to leave, Saw some plumb bushes in full bloom, those were the plumb bushes which I have seen for some time. Killed an Elk an[d] a Beaver to day. The beaver of this river is much larger than usual, Great deal of Sign of the large Bear,

[Lewis:]

Saturday April 20th 1805.

The wind continued to blow tolerably hard this morning but by no means as violently as it did yesterday; we determined to set out and accordingly departed a little before seven. I walked on shore on the N. side of the river, and Capt Clark proceeded with the party. the river bottoms through which I passed about seven miles were fertile and well covered with Cottonwood some Boxelder, ash and red Elm. the under brush, willow, rose bushes Honeysuckles, red willow, goosbury, currant and serviceberry & in the open grounds along the foot of the river hills immense quantities of the hisop.¹ in the course of my walk I killed two deer, wounded an Elk and a deer; saw the remains of some Indian hunting camps, near which stood a small scaffold of about 7 feet high on which were deposited two doog slays with their harness. underneath this scaffold a human body was lying, well rolled in several dressed buffaloe skins and near it a bag of the same materials containing sundry articles belonging to the diseased; consisting of a pair of mockersons, some red and blue earth, beaver's nails, instruments for dressing the Buffalo skin, some dried roots, several platts of the sweet grass, and a small quantity of Mandan tobacco. I presume that the body, as well as the bag containing these articles, had formerly been placed on the scaffold as is the custom of these people, but had fallen down by accident. near the scaffold I saw the carcass of a large dog

¹ In the MS. occurs here a red-ink interlineation (cancelled, however, by another pen), "copy this for Dr. Barton." As previously explained, in Biddle's text most of the natural history notes are omitted, because he had intended that this material should be worked up by Dr. Benjamin Smith Barton. The latter failed to do this; and the often elaborate observations of Lewis and Clark on the fauna, flora, and silva of the Great West have therefore been hitherto practically lost to the scientific world. — Ed.

not yet decayed, which I supposed had been killed at the time the human body was left on the scaffold; this was no doubt the reward, which the poor doog had met with for performing the [blank space in MS.] friendly office to his mistres of transporting her corps to the place of deposit. it is customary with the Assinniboins, Mandans, Minetares &c who scaffold their dead, to sacrifice the favorite horses and doggs of their diseased relations, with a view of their being servicable to them in the land of sperits. I have never heard of any instances of human sacrifices on those occasions among them.

The wind blew so hard that I concluded it was impossible for the perogues and canoes to proceed and therefore returned and joined them about three in the evening. Capt. Clark informed me that soon after seting out, a part of the bank of the river fell in near one of the canoes and had very nearly filled her with water. that the wind became so hard and the waves so high that it was with infinite risk he had been able to get as far as his present station. the white perogue and several of the canoes had shiped water several times but happily our stores were but little injured; those which were wet we put out to dry and determined to remain untill the next morning. we sent out four hunters who soon added 3 Elk 4 gees and 2 deer to our stock of provisions. the party caught six beaver today which were large and in fine order. the Buffalo, Elk and deer are poor at this season, and of cours are not very palitable, however our good health and appetites make up every necessary deficiency, and we eat very heartily of them. encamped on Star^d side; under a high well timbered bank.

Courses and Distances of this day.

		Miles
South	to the upper part of a timbered bottom at a bluff on the Lar ^d side	1 1/2
West	to a point of high timber on the Sta ^d Si ^d passing over a large sand point on St ^d side	1 1/2
N. 45. W.	to a large tree in a bend on star ^d side opposite a large sand point	1 1/2
S. 45. W.	to a point of low willows on Sta ^d side	2
		Miles 6 1/2

Clark:]

20th of April Saturday 1805

Wind a head from the N W. we set out at 7 oClock proceeded on, soon after we set out a Bank fell in near one of the canoes which like to have filled her with water, the wind became hard and waves so rough that we proceeded with our little canoes with much risque, our situation was such after setting out that we were obliged to pass round the 1st Point or lay exposed to the blustering winds & waves, in passing round the Point several canoes took in water as also our large Perogue but without injuring our stores &c much I proceeded on to the upper part of the 1st bend and came too at a butifull Glade on the S.S. about 1 mile below Cap' Lewis who had walked thro' the point, left his Coat & a Deer on the bank which we took on board, a short distance below our Camp I saw some rafts on the S. S. near which, an Indian woman was scuffled in the Indian form of Deposing their Dead and fallen down She was or had been raised about 6 feet, inclosed in Several robes tightly laced around her, with her dog Slays, her bag of Different coloured earths paint small bones of animals beaver nales and Several other little trinkets, also a blue jay, her dog was killed and lay near her. Cap' Lewis joined me soon after I landed & informed me he had walked several miles higher, & in his walk killed 2 Deer & wounded an Elk & a Deer, our party shot in the river four beaver & caught two, which were verry fat and much admired by the men, after we landed they killed 3 Elk 4 Gees & 2 Deer we had some of our Provisions &c which got a little wet aired, the wind continued so hard that we were compelled to delay all day. Saw several buffalow lodged in the drift wood which had been drowned in the winter in passing the river; saw the remains of 2 which had lodged on the side of the bank & eat by the bears.

Course distance &c: 20th of April 1805

South 1 ½ miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom at a bluff
on the La^d Side
West 1 ½ miles to a high timber on the S^d Side passing over a
large Sand point on S.S.
N. 45° W. 1 ½ mile to a tree in a Glade in a bend to the Starboard
Side a sand p^t ops^d
S. 45° W. 2 miles to a point of low willows on the S^d Side.
6 ½

This morning was verry cold, some snow about 2 oClock
from flying clouds, Some frost this morning & the mud at
the edge of the water was frosted

[Lewis:]

Sunday April 21st 1805.

Set out at an early hour this morning. Capt Clark walked
on shore; the wind tho' a head was not violent. the country
through which we passed is very simelar in every respect to
that through which we have passed for several days. We saw
immence herds of buffaloe Elk deer & Antelopes. Capt.
Clark killed a buffaloe and 4 deer in the course of his walk
today; and the party with me killed 3 deer, 2 beaver, and 4
buffaloe calves. the latter we found very delicious. I think
it equal to any veal I ever tasted. the Elk now begin to shed
their horns. passed one large and two small creeks on the
Lar^d side, tho' neither of them discharge any water at present.
the wind blew so hard this evening that we were obliged to
halt several hours. we reached the place of incampment after
dark, which was on the Lar^d side a little above *White earth*
river which discharges itself on the Sta^d side. immediately at
the mouth of this river it is not more then 10 yards wide being
choked up by the mud of the Missouri; tho' after leaving the
bottom lands of this river, or even sooner, it becomes a boald
stream of sixty yards wide and is deep and navigable. the
course of this river as far as I could see from the top of *Cut*
bluff, was due North. it passes through a beatifull level and

fertile vally about five miles in width. I think I saw about 25 miles up this river, and did not discover one tree or bush of any discription on it's borders. the vally was covered with Elk and buffaloe. saw a great number of gees today as usual, also some swan and ducks.

Courses and Distances of this day.

	mils
S. 18. E. to a sand point St ^d opposite to a bluf La ^d	1 ½
N. 75. W. to a point of high timber on St ^d opposite a blff.	½
N. 40. W. to a willow point on Lar ^d opposite to a bluff.	3 ½
N. 60. W. to a point of woodland on Star ^d . side, oposite to a bluff, just below which on the Lar ^d side a creek falls in.	4 ½
N. 25. E. to a point of wood land on Lar ^d opposite to a high bluff.	2.
N. 10. W. to the upper part of a bluff Star ^d and in a Star ^d bend.	2.
S. 50. W. to the upper point of the timbered bottom on Lar ^d side below a high bluff point which we called <i>Cut bluff</i> , at ½ mile Pass White Earth river on Star ^d	2 ½
	16 ½

[Clark:]

21st of April Sunday 1805.

Set out early the wind gentle & from the N.W. the river being verry crooked, I concluded to walk through the point, the countrey on either side is verry similar to that we have passed, Saw an emence number of Elk & Buffalow, also Deer Antelopes Geese Ducks & a few Swan, the Buffalow is about Calveing I killed a Buffalow & 4 Deer in my walk to day, the party killed 2 deer 2 beaver & 4 Buffalow Calves, which was verry good veele. I saw old camps of Indians on the L. Sidé, we passed 1 large & 2 small creeks on the L. Side neither of them discharge any water into the river, in the evening the wind became verry hard a head, we made camp at a late hour which was on the L. Side a little above the mouth of *White Earth* River which falls in on the Sta^d Side and is 60 yds. wide, several ml^t up

	miles	Course	distance &c.	21 ^d of ap ^l
S	18°	E	1½	ml. to a sand p ^l S. S. ops ^d a bluff on the L.S.
N.	75°	W	½	to a p ^l of high timber on the S.S ^d ops ^d a Bluff
N.	40°	W	3½	to a willow p ^l L. S ^d ops ^d a Bluff on the S.S ^d
N.	60°	W	4½	to a p ^l of wood land on the S.S ^d ops ^d a bluff just below which a creek falls in on the L.S.
N.	25°	E	2	to a p ^l of wood land on the L. S ^d oppos ^d to a high bluff on the Star ^d Side
N.	10°	W	2	to the upper part of a low bluff on the S.S ^d ops ^d to a p ^l of timber on the L. Side
N	50°	W	2½	miles to the upper part of a timber at a high short
miles			16½	bluff on the Lar ^d Side, passed white earth river at ½ mile on the S ^d Side

[Lewis:]

Monday April 22nd 1805.

Set out at an early hour this morning; proceeded pretty well until breakfa[s]t, when the wind became so hard a head that we proceeded with difficulty even with the assistance of our toe lines. the party halted and Cp^l Clark and myself walked to the white earth river which approaches the Missouri very near at this place, being about 4 miles above it's entrance. we found that it contained more water than streams of it's size generally do at this season. the water is much clearer than that of the Missouri. the banks of the river are steep and not more than ten or twelve feet high; the bed seems to be composed of mud altogether. the salts which have been before mentioned as common on the Missouri, appears in great quantities along the banks of this river, which are in many places so thickly covered with it that they appear perfectly white. perhaps it has been from this white appearance of it's banks that the river has derived it's name. this river is said to be navigable nearly to it's source, which is at no great distance from the Saskashawan, and I think from it's size the direction which it seems to take, and the latitude of it's mouth, that there is very good ground to believe that it

extends as far North as latitude 50.¹ this stream passes through an open country generally. the broken hills of the Missouri about this place exhibit large irregular and broken masses of rocks and stones; some of which tho' 200 feet above the level of the water seem at some former period to have felt it's influence, for they appear smoth as if worn by the agetation of the water. this collection consists of white & grey gannite, a brittle black rock, flint, limestone, freestone, some small specimens of an excellent pebble and occasionally broken stratis of a stone which appears to be petrefyed wood; it is of a black colour, and makes excellent whetstones. Coal or carbonated wood pumice stone lava and other mineral appearances still continue. the coal appears to be of better quality; I exposed a specimen of it to the fire and found that it birnt tolerably well, it afforded but little flame or smoke, but produced a hot and lasting fire. I ascended to the top of the cutt bluff this morning, from whence I had a most delightfull view of the country, the whole of which except the vally formed by the Missouri is void of timber or underbrush, exposing to the first glance of the spectator immense herds of Buffaloe, Elk, deer, & Antelopes feeding in one common and boundless pasture. we saw a number of bever feeding on the bark of the trees alonge the verge of the river, several of which we shot, found them large and fat. walking on shore this evening I met with a buffaloe calf which attatched itself to me and continued to follow close at my heels untill I embarked and left it.² it appeared allarmed at my dog which was probably the cause of it's so readily attatching itself to me. Capt Clark informed me that he saw a large drove of buffaloe pursued by wolves today, that they at length caught a calf which was unable to keep up with the herd. the cows only defend their young so long as they are able to keep up with the herd, and seldom return any distance in surch of them.

¹ White Earth River rises in the Coteau du Missouri, near the 49th parallel. — Ed.

² Catlin mentions (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, 255, 256) the docile and affectionate disposition of the buffaloe calf; he was able to lure to his camp a dozen of them, who were successfully fed on the milk of a domestic cow. He succeeded in transporting one of these to the Chouteau farm near St. Louis, where it throve well. — Ed.

LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [April 22

Courses and distances of 22nd of April. 1805.

N. 60° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side.	miles 2. ½
W. along the woodland on Lar ^d shore	1
S. 70. W. to the lower point of a bluff in a bend on star ^d side	1.
S. 20. W. to the upper part of the star ^d bluff.	2.
S. 60. E. to a point of woods in a bend on Star ^d	1.
S. 30. E. to a willow point on the Star ^d side.	2.
N. 65. E. to an object in a bend on Lar ^d where we encamped for the evening	1 ½
Miles	.11.

Point of Observation N^o 6. — April 22nd 1805.

On the Lar^d shore one mile above the *cut bluff*

Observed time and distance of ☉^s and ☽^s nearest limbs, with Sextant, the ☉ East.

Time.		Distance.		Time.		Distance.									
h	m	s	°	'	"	h	m								
A.M.	10.	44.	3.	—	84.	20.	45	A.M.	11.	1.	54.	—	84.	15.	-
	"	46.	16.	—	"	20.	30.		"	4.	25.	—	"	14.	-
	"	48.	8.	—	"	20.	-		"	6.	8.	—	"	13.	45.
	"	49.	28.	—	"	19.	45.		"	7.	2.	—	"	12.	45
	"	50.	24.	—	"	19.	30		"	8.	3.	—	"	12.	45
	"	51.	27.	—	"	19.	30		"	9.	4.	—	"	12.	37 ½
	"	52.	35.	—	"	19.	-		"	10.	20.	—	"	12.	30
	"	53.	40.	—	"	18.	45.		"	12.	40.	—	"	12.	-

Observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant

h			m			s		
A.M.	11.	21.	49.	—	P.M.	5.	13.	38.
	"	23.	38	—		"	15.	31.
	"	25.	29.	—		"	17.	20.

Altitude by Sextant at the time of observation 77° 52' 45^h

[Clark:]

22nd of April Monday 1805

a very cold morning Some frost, we set out at an early hour and proceeded on very well untill brakfast at which time the wind began to blow verry hard ahead, and continued

hard all day we proceeded on with much difficulty with the assistance of the toe Ropes. Cap! Lewis & my self walked to the River which is near the Missouri four miles above its mouth, this river is 60 yards wide and contains a greater perportion of water at this time than is common for Rivers of its size it appears navigable as far as any of the party was, and I am told to near its source in morrasses in the open Plains, it passes (as far as we can see which is 6 or 7 Leagus) thro' a butifull extinsive vallee, rich & fertile and at this time covered with Buffalow, Elk & antelopes, which may be Seen also in any other direction in this quarter. this river must take its rise at no great distance East of the Saskashawan, and no doubt as far N. as Lat^d 50°.

Some of the high plains on the broken rivers [banks] of the river contains great quantity of Pebble Stones of various sizes, The Stratum of coal is much richer than below, the appearances of Mineral & burnt hills still continue the river rising a little, Saw an emence number of beaver feeding on the waters edge & swiming killed several, Cap! Lewis ascended a hill from the top of which he had a most inchanting prospect of the Countrey around & the meanderings of the two rivers, which is remarkable crooked. a buffalow calf which was on the shore alone followed Cap Lewis some distance, I observed a large drove of buffalow prosued by wolves cought one of their calves in my view, those animals defend their young as long as they can keep up with the drove

Course & Distance 22nd of April

N. 60° W.	^{miles} 2½	to a point of wood land on the L ^d Side
West	1	along the wood on the L ^d point
S. 70° W.	1	to the lower point of a bluff in a bend to the Starboard Side
S. 20° W.	2	to the upper part of the Said bluff on the Starboard Side
S. 60° E	1	to a wood in a bend to the S ^d Side
S. 30° E	2	to a willow point on the S ^d Side
N. 65° E	1½	to an object in a bend to the L. S. and camped

11

[Lewis:]

Tuesday April 23rd

Set out at an early hour this morning. about nine A.M. the wind arose, and shortly after became so violent that we were unable to proceed, in short it was with much difficulty and some risk that I was enabled to get the canoes and perogues into a place of tolerable safety, there being no timber on either side of the river at this place. some of the canoes shipped water, and wet several parcels of their lading, which I directed to be opened and aired. we remained untill five in the evening when the wind abating in some measure, we reloaded, and proceeded. shortly after we were joined by Capt. Clark who had walked on shore this morning, and passing through the bottom lands had fallen on the river some miles above, and concluding that the wind had detained us, came down the river in surch of us. he had killed three black-tailed, or mule deer, and a buffaloe Calf, in the course of his ramble. these hard winds, being so frequently repeated, become a serious source of detention to us. incamped on the Star^d side.¹

Courses and distances of the 23rd April.

	Miles
S. 25. E. to a point of timbered land on Star ^d -	2. $\frac{1}{2}$
S. along this Star ^d point of woodland. a high bluff opposite	1.
S. 78. W. to a cops of woods, under a hill on Star ^d in a bend	4.
S. 14. E. to a point of high timber in a Lar ^d bend passing the extremity of a little bay S ^l ^d .	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
S. 25. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side.	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
	13 $\frac{1}{2}$

[Clark:]

23rd of April 1805

A cold morning at about 9 oClock the wind as usual rose from the N W and continued to blow verry hard untill late in the evening I walked on Shore after brackfast in my walk on the S Side passed through extensive bottoms of timber intersperced with glades & low open plains, I killed 3 mule or black tail Deer, which was in tolerable order, Saw Several others, I also killed a Buffalow calf which was verry fine, I struck the river above the Perogus which had come too in a

¹ This was above Painted Wood Creek. — Ed.

bend to the L.S. to shelter from the wind which had become violently hard, I joined Cap^t Lewis in the evening & after the winds falling which was late in the evening we proceeded on & encamped on the S.S. The winds of this country which blow with some violence almost every day, has become a serious obstruction in our progression onward, as we cant move when the wind is high with[out] great risque, and [if] there was no risque the winds is generally a head and often too violent to proceed

Course & Distance 23^d April

- S. 25° E. 2½ miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side
 South 1 mile on the S^d point, of wood land a high Bluff opposit.
 S. 78° W. 4 miles to a copse of woods under a hill to the S^d Side in
 a bend
 S. 14° E. 4½ miles to a point of high timber in a larboard bend,
 passing the enterence of a little bay to S.S.
 S. 25° W. 1½ miles to a point of woods on the L^d Side
 miles 13½

[Lewis:]

Wednesday April 24th

The wind blew so hard during the whole of this day, that we were unable to move. notwithstanding that we were sheltered by high timber from the effects of the wind, such was it's violence that it caused the waves to rise in such manner as to wet many articles in the small canoes before they could be unloaded. we sent out some hunters who killed 4 deer & 2 Elk, and caught some young wolves of the small kind. Soar eyes is a common complaint among the party. I believe it origenates from the immense quantities of sand which is driven by the wind from the sandbars of the river in such clouds that you are unable to discover the opposite bank of the river in many instances. the particles of this sand are so fine and light that they are easily supported by the air, and are carried by the wind for many miles, and at a distance exhibiting every appearance of a collumn of thick smoke. so penetrating is this sand that we cannot keep any article free from it; in short we are compelled to eat, drink, and breath it very freely. my

pocket watch, is out of order, she will run only a few minutes without stopping. I can discover no radical defect in her works, and must therefore attribute it to the sand, with which, she seems plentifully charged, notwithstanding her cases are double and tight.

[Clark:]

23th of April Wednesday 1805

The wind rose last night and continued blowing from the N. & N W. and sometimes with great violence, untill 7 o'clock P.M. Several articles wet in the Perogues by their taking water &c as the wind was a head we could not move to day Sent out hunters, they killed 4 Deer 2 Elk & caught some young wolves of the small kind. The party complain much of the Sand in their eyes, The sand is verry fine and rises in clouds from the Points and bars of the river, I may say that during those winds we eat Drink & breathe a pre-portion of sand.

[Lewis:]

Thursday April 25th 1805.

The wind was more moderate this morning, tho' still hard; we set out at an early hour.¹ the water friezied on the oars this morning as the men rowed. about 10 o'clock A.M. the wind began to blow so violently that we were obliged to lye too. my dog had been absent during the last night, and I was fearfull we had lost him altogether, however, much to my satisfaction he joined us at 8 o'clock this morning. The wind had been so unfavorable to our progress for several days past, and seeing but little prospect of a favourable chang; knowing that the river was crooked, from the report of the hunters who were out yesterday, and beleiving that we were at no very great distance from the Yellow stone River; I determined, in order as mush as possible to avoid detention, to proceed by land with a few men to the entrance of that river and make the necessary observations to determine it's position, which I hoped to effect by the time that Capt. Clark could arrive with the party;

¹ I remarked, as a singular circumstance, that there is no dew in this country, and very little rain. Can it be owing to the want of timber? — GASS (p. 114).

accordingly I set out at 11 O^C on the Lar^d side, accompanied by four men. we proceeded about four miles, when falling in with some buffalo I killed a yearling calf, which was in good order; we soon cooked and made a hearty meal of a part of it, and renewed our march. our rout lay along the foot of the river hills. when we had proceeded about four miles, I ascended the hills from whence I had a most pleasing view of the country, particularly of the wide and fertile vallies formed by the missouri and the yellowstone rivers, which occasionally unmasked by the wood on their borders disclose their meanderings for many miles in their passage through these delightful tracts of country. I could not discover the junction of the rivers immediately, they being concealed by the wood; however, sensible that it could not be distant I determined to encamp on the bank of the Yellow stone river which made it's appearance about 2 miles South of me. the whol face of the country was covered with herds of Buffalo, Elk & Antelopes; deer are also abundant, but keep themselves more concealed in the woodland. the buffalo Elk and Antelope are so gentle that we pass near them while feeding, without appearing to excite any alarm among them; and when we attract their attention, they frequently approach us more nearly to discover what we are, and in some instances pursue us a considerable distance apparently with that view. in our way to the place I had determined to encamp, we met with two large herds of buffalo, of which we killed three cows and a calf. two of the former, wer but lean, we therefore took their tongues and a part of their marrow-bones only. I then proceeded to the place of our encampment with two of the men, taking with us the Calf and marrowbones, while the other two remained, with orders to dress the cow that was in tolerable order, and hang the meat out of the reach of the wolves, a precaution indispensible to it's safe keeping, even for a night. we encamped on the bank of the yellow stone river, 2 miles South of it's confluence with the Missouri. On rejoining Cap^t Clark, the 26th in the evening, he informed me, that at 5. P.M. after I left him the wind abated in some measure and he proceeded a few miles further and encamped.

LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [April 25

The courses and distances of this day (25th) being as follow.

	Miles
N. 68° W. to a point of woodland on Lar ^d side	2. $\frac{3}{2}$
West to a tree in a low plain, in a bend on St ^d	1. $\frac{1}{4}$
South. to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend on Star ^d side	1. $\frac{1}{2}$
East. to a point of timbered land on Star ^d side.	2. $\frac{3}{2}$
S. 28° E. along the Star ^d point, opposite a bluff	. $\frac{3}{4}$
S. 20° W. along the Star ^d point opposite a bluff	1.
N. 65° W. to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend on Star ^d side	3.
S. 72° W. to the lower point of some timber in a bend on Star ^d side	1. $\frac{3}{4}$
	14 $\frac{1}{4}$

[Clark:]

25th of April Thursday 1805

The wind was moderate & ahead this morning, we set out at an early hour The morning cold, some flying clouds to be seen, the wind from the N: ice collected on the ores this morning, the wind increased and became so violent about 1 oClock we were obliged to lay by our canoes haveing taken in some water, the Dog which was lost yesterday, joined us this morning.

finding that the winds retarded our pregression for many days past, and no app[er]arance of an alteration, and the river being [so] crooked that we could never have 3 miles fair wind, Cap^t Lewis concluded to go by land as far as the Rochejhone or yellow Stone river, which we expect is at no great distance by land and make Some Selestial observations to find the situation of its mouth, and by that measure not detain the Perogues at that place any time for the purpose of making those necessary observations he took 4 men & proceeded on up the Missouri on the L. Side, at 5 oClock the wind lulled and we proceeded on and incamped



SCALP DANCE OF THE MINNAPRES



SCALP DANCE OF THE MINNAPUTES

Course Distance & 25th of April

N. 68° W.	2½	miles to point of wood land on the Larboard Side
West	1¼	miles to a tree in a bend to the S ^d Side in a low plain
South	1½	miles to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend to the S ^d Side
East	2½	miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side.
S. 28° E.	¾	on the S. rd point. Bluff ops ^d
S. 20° W.	1	mile on the St ^d point bluff ops ^d
N. 65° W.	3	miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend to the S.S ^d
S. 72° W.	1¾	mile to the lower part of some timber in a bend to the S. Side
	14¾	

[Lewis:]

Friday April 26th 1805.

This morning I dispatched Joseph Fields up the yellowstone river with orders to examine it as far as he could conveniently and return the same evening; two others were directed to bring in the meat we had killed last evening, while I proceeded down the river with one man in order to take a view of the confluence of this great river with the Missouri, which we found to be two miles distant on a direct line N.W. from our encampment. the bottom land on the lower side of the yellowstone river near it's mouth, for about one mile in width appears to be subject to inundation; while that on the opposite side of the Missouri and the point formed by the junction of these rivers is of the common elivation, say from twelve to 18 feet above the level of the water, and of course not liable to be overflowed except in extreem high water, which dose not appear to be very frequent. there is more timber in the neighbourhood of the junction of these rivers, and on the Missouri as far below as the White-earth river, than there is on any part of the Missouri above the entrance of the Chyenne river to this place. the timber consists principally of Cottonwood, with some small elm, ash and boxalder. the under growth on the sandbars and verge of the river is the small leafed willow; the low bottoms, rose bushes which rise to three or four feet high, the redburly, servicebury, and the

redwood; the high bottoms are of two descriptions, either timbered or open; the first lies next to the river and it's under brush is the same with that of the low timbered bottoms with the addition of the broad leafed willow, Goosbury, choke cherry, purple currant, and honeysuckle bushis; the open bottoms border on the hills, and are covered in many parts by the wild hyssop which rises to the hight of two feet. I observe that the Antelope, Buffalo Elk and deer feed on this herb; the willow of the sandbars also furnish a favorite winter food to these animals as well as the growse, the porcupine, hare, and rabbit. about 12 O[c]lock I heard the discharge of several guns at the junction of the rivers, which announced to me the arrival of the party with Capt Clark; I afterwards learnt that they had fired on some buffalo which they met with at that place, and of which they killed a cow and several Calves; the latter are now fine veal. I dispatched one of the men to Capt Clark requesting him to send up a canoe to take down the meat we had killed and our baggage to his encampnt, which was accordingly complied with. after I had completed my observations in the evening I walked down and joined the party at their encampment on the point of land formed by the junction of the rivers; found them all in good health, and much pleased at having arrived at this long wished for spot, and in order to add in some measure to the general pleasure which seemed to pervade our little community, we ordered a dram to be issued to each person; this soon produced the fiddle, and they spent the evening with much hilarity, singing & dancing, and seemed as perfectly to forget their past toils, as they appeared regardless of those to come. in the evening, the man I had sent up the river this morning returned, and reported that he had ascended it about eight miles on a streight line; that he found it crooked, meandering from side to side of the valley formed by it; which is from four to five miles wide. the corrent of the river gentle, and it's bed much interrupted and broken by sandbars; at the distance of five miles he passed a large Island well covered with timber, and three miles higher a large creek falls in on the S.E. side above a high bluff in which there are several stratas of coal. the

country bordering on this river as far as he could perceive, like that of the Missouri, consisted of open plains. he saw several of the bighorned animals in the course of his walk; but they were so shy that he could not get a shoot at them; he found a large horn of one of these animals which he brought with him. the bed of the yellowstone river is entirely composed of sand and mud, not a stone of any kind to be seen in it near it's entrance. Capt Clark measured these rivers just above their confluence; found the bed of the Missouri 520 yards wide, the water occupying 330. it's channel deep. the yellowstone river including it's sandbar, 858 y^d of which, the water occupied 297 yards; the deepest part 12 feet; it was falling at this time & appeared to be nearly at it's summer tide. the Indians inform that the yellowstone river is navigable for perogues and canoes nearly to it's source in the Rocky Mountains, and that in it's course near these mountains it passes within less than half a day's march of a navigable part of the Missouri. it's extreme sources are adjacent to those of the Missouri, river platte, and I think probably with some of the South branch of the Columbia river.¹ the first part of its course lies through a mountainous rocky country tho' well timbered and in many parts fertile; the middle, and much the most extensive portion of the river lies through a delightful rich and fertile country, well covered with timber, interspersed with plains and meadows, and well watered; it is some what broken in many parts. the lower portion consists of fertile open plains and meadows almost entirely, tho' it possesses a considerable proportion of timber on it's borders. the current of the upper portion is extremely rapid, that of the middle and lower portions much more gentle than the Missouri. the water of this river is turbid, tho' does not possess as much sediment as that of the Missouri. this river

¹ The name Yellowstone is simply the English of the French name Roche Jaune, itself without doubt translated from an earlier Indian appellation. Chittenden thinks that this name originated from the yellow color of the rocks which form the walls of the Grand Cañon of the Yellowstone; see his *Yellowstone National Park* (Cincinnati, 1895), pp. 1-7. The name Yellowstone appears to have been first recorded (1798) by David Thompson, the British explorer. — ED.

in it's course recieves the waters of many large tributary str[e]ams principally from the S.E. of which the most considerable are the Tongue and bighorn rivers (*& Clark's fork*) the former is much the largest, (*rather the smallest — next in size Clarkes fork, and the Big horn the largest by much.*) and heads with the river Platte and Bighorn river, as dose the latter with the Tongue river and the river Platte. a sufficient quantity of limestone may be readily procured for building near the junction of the Missouri and yellowstone rivers. I could observe no regular stratas of it, tho' it lies on the sides of the river hills in large irregular masses, in considerable quantities; it is of a light colour, and appears to be of an excellent quality.

The courses and distances of the 26th as the party ascended the Missouri, are as follow

	Miles
S. 45. E. to a point of woodland on the Star ^d side	2 1/2
S. 40. W. along the Sta ^d point, opposite a bluff	1 1/2
N. 75. W. to the commencement of the wood in a bend on Star ^d side	3.
South. to the point of land formed by the junction of the Missouri and yellow stone rivers	1.
	8.-
	Miles —

Point of Observation N^o 7. April 26th 1805.

On the Lar^d bank of the yellowstone river 2 miles S.E. of it's junction with the Missouri observed Equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant and artificial horizon.

A.M.	9.	^h	^m	^s	—	P.M.	6.	^h	^m	^s	}	Alt ^d given by Sextant at the		
	41.		13.				49.		3.			} <i>time of observation</i>		
	42.		52				50.		41.				} 48° 57'. 45"	
	44.		31.				52.		17.					

Chronometer too fast mean time [blank space in MS.]

☁. the clouds this morning prevented my observing the moon with *a. Aquilæ*; and as the moon was not again observeable untill the 1st of May, I determined not to wait, but reather to relinquish for the present the obtaining the necessary data to fix the longitude of this place.

Observed Meridian altitude of ☉^s L. L. with Octant by the back observation

73° 47'

Latitude deduced from this observation. [blank space in MS.]

[Clark:]

26th of April Friday 1805

last night was very cold. the Thermometer stood at 32 above 0 this morning. I set out at an early hour, as it was cold I walked on the bank, & in my walk Shot a beaver & 2 Deer, one of the Deer in tolerable order, the low bottom of the river is generally covered with wood[,] willows & rose bushes, red berry, wild cherry & red or arrow wood intersperced with glades The timber is Cottonwood principally, Elm small ash also furnish a portion of the timber. The clay of the bluffs appear much whiter than below, and contain several Stratum of coal, on the hill sides I observe pebbles of different size & colour. The river has been rising for several days, & raised 3 inches last night, at 12 oClock arrived at the forks of the Roche Johne & Missouri and formed a camp on the point. Soon after George Drewyer came from Cap' Lewis & informed me that he was a little way up the Rochejohne and would join me this evening, I sent a canoe up to Cap' Lewis and proceeded [to] measure the width of the [river], and find the debth. The Missouri is 520 yards wide above the point of Yellow Stone and the water covers 330 yards, the YellowStone River is 858 yards wide including its sand bar, the water covers 297 yards and the deepest part is 12 feet water, it is at this time falling, the Missouri rising The Indians inform that the Yellow Stone River is navigable for Perogues to near its source in the Rocky Mountains, it has many tributary streams, principally on the S.E. side, and heads at no great distance from the Missouri, the largest rivers which fall into it is Tongue river which heads with the waters of River Platt, and Bighorn river which also heads with Platt & Tongue R the current of this river is said to be rapid near its mouth it is very jentle, and its water is of a whitish colour much clearer of Sediment than the Missouri, the Countrey on this river is said to be broken in its whole course & contains a great deel of wood, the country about its mouth is very fine, the bottoms on either side is wooded with Cotton wood, ash, Elm, &c near the banks of the river back is higher bottoms and covered with red berry, Goose berry & rose bushes & interspersed with

small open Glades, and near the high land is Generally open rich bottoms. at our arrival at the forks I observed a Drove of Buffalow Cows & Calves on a sand bar in the point, I directed the men to kill the fattest Cox, and 3 or 4 calves, which they did and let the others pass, the cows are poor, calves fine veele.

Course & Distance 26th of April

S. 45° E. 2½ miles to a point of wood land on the Starboard Side
 S. 40° W. 1½ miles on the S. p^t a bluff opposit
 N. 75° W. 3 miles to the commencement of a wood bottom in a
 bend to the St^d Side
 South 1 mile to the junction of Rochejhone or yellowstone
 River & the Mis[s]ouri

 8

Capt Lewis joined me in the evening after takeing equal altitudes a little way up the Yellowstone river the countrey in every direction is plains except the moul[d] bottoms of the river, which are covered with some indifferent timber such as Cotton wood, Elm & small ash, with different kind of S[h]rubs & bushes on the forks about 1 mile from the point at which place the 2 rivers are near each other a butifull low leavel plain commences, and extends up the Missouri & back, this plain is narrow at its commencement and widens as the Missouri bends north, and is bordered by an extencive wood land for many miles up the Yellow Stone river, this low plain is not Subject to over flow, appear to be a few inches above high water mark and affords a butifull commanding situation for a fort near the commencement of the Prarie, about [blank space in MS.] miles from the Point & [blank space in MS.] yards from the Missouri a small lake is Situated, from this lake the plain rises gradually to a high butifull countrey, the low Plain continues for some distance up both rivers on the Yellow Stone it is wide & butifull ops^d the point on the S. Side is some high timbered land, about 1½ miles below on the same side a little distance from the water is an elivated plain. Several of the party was up the Yellow Stone R several miles, & informed that it meandered through a butifull coun-

treys Joseph Fields discovered a large creek falling into the Yellowstone River on the S. E. Side 8 miles up near which he saw a big horned animal, he found in the Prarie the horn of one of those animals which was large and appeared to have laid several years. I Saw mancy buffalow dead on the banks of the river in different places some of them eaten by the white bears & wolves all except the skin & bones, others entire, those animals either drouded in attempting to cross on the ice dureing the winter or swimming across to bluff banks where they could not get out & too weak to return we saw several in this Situation. emence numbers of antelopes in the forks of the river, Buffalow & Elk & Deer is also plenty. beaver is in every bend. I observe that the Magpie Goose duck & Eagle all have their nests in the Same neighbourhood, and it is not uncommon for the Magpie to build in a few rods of the eagle, the nests of this bird is built verry strong with sticks covered verry thickly with one or more places through which they enter or escape, the Goose I make no doubt falls a pray to those vicious eagles

[Lewis:]

Saturday April 27th 1805

Previous to our seting out this morning I made the following observations.

Point of observation N° 8.

Suns magnetic azimuth by Circumferentor	N. 81° E.
Time by Chronometer A.M.	$\begin{smallmatrix} h & m & s \\ 9. & 27. & 14. \end{smallmatrix}$
Altitude by sextant	$44^{\circ} 56' 30''$
Sun's magnetic azimuth by Circumferentor	N. 82° E.
Time by Chronometer A. M.	$\begin{smallmatrix} h & m & s \\ 9. & 34. & 29. \\ c & ' & '' \end{smallmatrix}$
Altitude by Sextant	$47. 22. - .$
Sun's Magnetic azimuth by Circumferentor	N. 83° E.
Time by Chronometer. A.M.	$\begin{smallmatrix} h & m & s \\ 9. & 42. & 17. \end{smallmatrix}$
Altitude by Sextant	$49. 56. 30.$

This morning I walked through the point formed by the junction of the rivers; the woodland extends about a mile, when the rivers approach each other within less than half a mile; here a beautiful level low plain commences and extends up both rivers for many miles, widening as the rivers recede from each other, and extending back half a mile to a plain about 12 feet higher than itself; the low plain appears to be a few inches higher than high water mark and of course will not be liable to be overflowed; tho' where it joins the high plain a part of the Missouri when at it's greatest hight, passes through a channel of 60 or 70 yards wide and falls into the yellowstone river. on the Missouri about 2½ miles from the entrance of the yellowstone river, and between this high and low plain, a small lake is situated about 200 yards wide extending along the edge of the high plain parallel with the Missouri about one mile. on the point of the high plain at the lower extremity of this lake I think would be the most eligible site for an establishment between this low plain and the Yellow stone river their is an extensive body of timbered land extending up the river for many miles. this site recommended is about 400 yards distant from the Missouri and about double that distance from the river yellow stone; from it the high plain, rising very gradually, extends back about three miles to the hills, and continues with the same width between these hills and the timbered land on the yellowstone river, up that stream, for seven or eight miles; and is one of the ha[n]dsomest plains I ever beheld. on the Missouri side the hills circumscribe it's width, & at the distance of three miles up that river from this cite, it is not more than 400 yards wide. Capt Clark thinks that the lower extremity of the low plane would be most eligible for this establishment; it is true that it is much nearer both rivers, and might answer very well, but I think it reather too low to venture a permanent establishment, particularly if built of brick or other durable materials, at any considerable expence; for so capricious, and versatile are these rivers, that it is difficult to say how long it will be, untill they direct the force of their currents against this narrow part of the low plain, which when they do, must shortly yeald to their influence; in

such case a few years only would be necessary, for the annihilation of the plain, and with it the fortification.¹ I continued my walk on shore; at 11. A. M. the wind became very hard from N.W. insomuch that the perogues and canoes were unable either to proceed or pass the river to me; I was under the necessity therefore of shooting a goose and cooking it for my dinner. the wind abated about 4. P.M. and the party proceeded tho' I could not conveniently join them untill night. altho' game is very abundant and gentle, we only kill as much as is necessary for food. I believe that two good hunters could conveniently supply a regiment with provisions. for several days past we have observed a great number of buffaloe lying dead on the shore, some of them entire and others partly devoured by the wolves and bear. those animals either drowned during the winter in attempting to pass the river on the ice during the winter or by swimming acr[oss] at present to bluff banks which they are unable to ascend, and feeling themselves too weak to return remain and perish for the want of food; in this situation we met with several little parties of them. beaver are very abundant, the party kill several of them every day. The Eagles, Magpies, and gees have their nests in trees adjacent to each other; the magpy particularly appears fond of building near the Eagle, as we scarcely see an Eagle's nest unaccompanied with two or three Magpies nests within a short distance. The bald Eagle are more abundant here than I ever observed them in any part of the country.

Courses and distances 27th April 1805.

	Miles
N. 9° E. to the upper part of the timber on Lar ^d in the point, the same being the commencement of the low plain, at which the Missouri and yellowstone riv- ers are about 250 yards distant.	1.
West. to the lower part of the timber in the bend on Lar ^d side	1.

¹ A conclusion justified by the notable changes which have occurred during the century past, in the courses of these rivers at their confluence. — Ed.

N. 32. W.	to a point of the timbered bottom on Lar ^d opposite to a low bluff, between two points of wooded bottom $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile distant from each other; a beautiful plain back. several high open situations, between the woodlands on the Star ^d side	3
West.	to a point of small willows on the Star ^d side, ¹ opposite a low white bluff bordering a beautiful rising plain; some woodland below this bluff on the Lar ^d side, and a thick wooded bottom on Star ^d side. on this course the river is wide, and crowded with sandbars. a little below the low bluff on the Lar ^d side, a timbered bottom commences; here the country rises gradually from the river on the Lar ^d side	3 - Miles 8.

[Clark:]

27th of April Saturday 1805

after take[ing] the azmuth of the Sun & brackfasting we set out wind moderate & a head, at 11 oClock the wind rose and continued to blow verry hard a head from the N. W. untill 4 oClock PM, which blew the sand off the Points in such clouds as almost covered us on the opposit bank, at 4 I set out from my unpleasent Situation and proceeded on, Cap^t Lewis walked on shore in the Point to examine & view the Countrey and could not get to the boats untill night, Saw great numbers of Goats or antilopes, Elk, Swan Gees & Ducks, no buffalow to day I saw several beaver and much sign, I shot one in the head which imediately sunk, altho the game of different kinds are in abundance we kill nothing but what we can make use of

Course, distance the 27th of April

N. 9° E 1 mile to the upper part of the wood in the point and commencement of a butifull elivated plain at which place the Yellow Stone river is about 250 yards distant from the Mi[s]souri

¹ At the site of old Fort Union — a post built in 1830 by the American Fur Company; see Chittenden's account of it (*Amer. Fur Trade*, pp. 959, 960). — ED.

- West 1 mile to the lower part of the timber in a bend to the Lar^d Side back of which and on the river below is [a] high bottom, and the upper plains are not so high as below and butifull as far as can be seen
- N. 32^o W 3 miles to a point of the timbered bottom on the La^d Side opposit a low bluff between two points of wooded bottom $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile distant from each a butifull plain back, several high open situations between the wood land in the S. bend.
- West 3 miles to a point of small Willows on the S^d Side opposit
miles 8 a low white bluff bordering a butifull riseing Plain, some wood land below this bluff on the L.S. and a thick wooded bottom on the S. Side in this course the river is wide and crouded with sand bars. a little above the low bluff on the L.S. a timbered bottom commences. here the country runs gradually from the river on the L.S.

CHAPTER VIII

PART I

FROM THE YELLOWSTONE TO THE MUSSELSHELL

Lewis's Journal, April 28—May 5, 1805

Clark's Journal, April 28—May 5

[Lewis:]

Sunday April 28th 1805.

SET out this morning at an early hour; the wind was favourable and we employed our sails to advantage. Capt Clark walked on shore this morning, and I proceeded with the party. the country through which we passed today is open as usual and very broken on both sides near the river hills, the bottoms are level fertile and partially covered with timber. the hills and bluffs exhibit their usual mineral appearances, some birnt hills but no appearance of Pumicestone; coal is in great abundance and the salts still increase in quantity; the banks of the river and sandbars are incrustated with it in many places and appear perfectly white as if covered with snow or frost. the woods are now green, tho' the plains and meadows appear to abate of the verdure those below exhibited some days past. we past three small runs today, two falling in on the Star^d and one on the Lar^d side, they are but small afford but little water and head a few miles back in the hills. we saw great quantities of game today; consisting of the common and mule deer, Elk, Buffaloe, and Antelopes; also four brown bear, one of which was fired on and wounded by one of the party but we did not get it; the beaver have cut great quantities of timber; saw a tree nearly 3 feet in diameter that had been felled by them. Capt. Clark in the course of his walk killed a deer and a goose; & saw three black bear; he thinks the bottoms are not so wide as they have been for some days past.

1805] YELLOWSTONE TO MUSSELSHELL

Courses and distances 28th of April.

	Miles
North.	to a point of timber on Lar ^d side.
N. 40. W.	to the upper part of the point on Lar ^d opposite to a high rugged bluff 2 ¹/₄
S. 56. W.	to a high bluff ^d on the Lar ^d side just above a timbered bottom, and opposite a point of woodland on Star ^d side 1.
S. 85. W.	to the center of a bend on Lar ^d side. 2 ³/₄
N. 25. W.	to a point of timbered land on Lar ^d passing a point on Star ^d side at 1 ¹ / ₄ M ^h 1.
N. 18. W.	to the lower point of the timber in a bend on Star ^d side 3.
S. 4. W.	to a point of woodland on Star ^d side. 2.
S. 10. W.	to a high bluff ^d point on Lar ^d side, the river making a considerable bend to S.E. 4.
N. 80. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side 2.
N. 45. W.	to a high bluff ^d point on the Star ^d side. 1.
S. 80. W.	to a point of woodland on Star ^d side. 3.
<hr style="width: 100px; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> Miles — 24.	

[Clark:]

28th of April Sunday 1805

a fine day river falling, wind favourable from the S.E. and moderate, I walked on shore to view the countrey, from the top of the high hills, I beheld a broken & open countrey on both Sides, near the river some verry handsom low plains, I kill^d a Deer & a goose, saw three black bear great numbers of Elk antelopes & 2 Gangues of Buffalow. The hills & Bluffs show the stratums of coal, and burnt appearances in maney places, in and about them I could find no appearance of Pumice Stone, the wood land have a green appearance, the Plains do not look so green as below. The bottoms are not so wide this afternoon as below. Saw four bear this evening, one of the men Shot at one of them. The antilopes are nearly red, on that part which is Subject to change i. e. the sides & $\frac{2}{3}$ of the back from the head, the other part as white as Snow, 2 small runs fall in on the S. Side and one this evening on the Lar^d Side those runs head at a few miles in the hills and discharge but little water, the Bluffs in this part

as also below Shew different stratum of coal or carbonated wood, and coloured earths, such as dark brown, yellow a lightish brown, & a dark red &c

Course & distance the 28th of April

N.		2 $\frac{1}{4}$	miles to a point of timber on the La ^d Side
N. 40° W.	1		to the upper part of the point on the L. Side opposit is a high rugid Bluff on the S.S.
S. 56° W.	2 $\frac{3}{4}$		To a high bluff on the L ^d Side opposit to a point of woods & just above a wood
S. 85° W.	1.		To the center of a bend on the La ^d Side
N. 25° W.	3.		To a point of timbered land on the L ^d Side passing a point on the S ^t Side at 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ miles
N. 18° W.	2.		To the lower point of a timber in a bend to the Star- board Side.
S. 4° W.	4.		To a point of wood Land on the S ^t Side
S. 10° W.	2.		To a high bluff point on the L. Side the river making a considerable bend S.E.
N. 80° W.	2.		to a point of wood land on the Lar ^d Side
N. 45° W.	1		to a high Bluff p ^t on the St ^d Side
S. 80° W.	3		To a point of wood land on the St ^d Side
		<u>24</u>	

[Lewis:]

Monday April 29th 1805.

Set out this morning at the usual hour; the wind was moderate; I walked on shore with one man. about 8. A.M. we fell in with two brown or yellow [*white*] bear; both of which we wounded; one of them made his escape, the other after my firing on him pursued me seventy or eighty yards, but fortunately had been so badly wounded that he was unable to pursue so closely as to prevent my charging my gun; we again repeated our fir[e] and killed him. it was a male not fully grown, we estimated his weight at 300 lb: not having the means of ascertaining it precisely. The legs of this bear are somewhat longer than those of the black, as are it's tallons and tusks incomparably larger and longer. the testicles, which in the black bear are placed pretty well back between the thyes and contained in one pouch like those of the dog and most quadrupeds, are in the yellow or brown bear placed much

further forward, and are suspended in separate pouches from two to four inches asunder; its colour is yellowish brown, the eyes small, black, and piercing; the front of the fore legs near the feet is usually black; the fur is finer thicker and deeper than that of the black bear. these are all the particulars in which this animal appeared to me to differ from the black bear;¹ it is a much more furious and formidable animal, and will frequently pursue the hunter when wounded. it is astonishing to see the wounds they will bear before they can be put to death. the Indians may well fear this animal equipped as they generally are with their bows and arrows or indifferent fuzees, but in the hands of skillfull riflemen they are by no means as formidable or dangerous as they have been represented.² game is still very abundant we can scarcely cast our eyes in any direction without perceiving deer Elk Buffaloe or Antelopes. The quantity of wolves appear to increase in the same proportion; they generally hunt in parties of six eight or ten; they kill a great number of the Antelopes at this season; the Antelopes are yet meagre and the females are big with young; the wolves take them most generally in attempting to swim the river; in this manner my dog caught one drowned it and brought it on shore; they are but clumsy swimmers, tho' on land when in good order, they are extremely fleet and durable. we have frequently seen the wolves in pursuit of the Antelope in the plains; they appear to decoy a single one from a flock, and then pursue it, alternately relieving each other untill they take it. on joining Capt Clark he informed me that he had seen a female and faun of the bighorned animal; that they ran for some distance with great apparent ease along the side of the river bluff where it was almost per-

¹ By "white bear," here and elsewhere in Lewis and Clark's journals, must not be understood the white or polar bear of Arctic regions, but the animal now known as "grizzly bear" (*Ursus horribilis*), first adequately described by our explorers. It was technically named in 1815. — ED.

² As no wound except through the head or heart is mortal, they frequently fall a sacrifice if they miss their aim. He rather attacks than avoids a man, and such is the terror which he has inspired, that the Indians who go in quest of him paint themselves and perform all the superstitious rites customary when they make war on a neighboring nation. — BIDDLE (i, p. 200).

pendicular; two of the party fired on them while in motion without effect. we took the flesh of the bear on board and proceeded. Capt. Clark walked on shore this evening, kille^d a deer, and saw several of the bighorned animals. there is more appearance of coal today than we have yet seen, the stratas are 6 feet thick in some instances; the earth has been burnt in many places, and always appears in stratas on the same level with the stratas of coal. we came too this evening in the mouth of a little river, which falls in on the Star^d side. this stream is about 50 yards wide from bank to bank; the water occupys about 15 yards. the banks are of earth only, abrupt, tho' not high — the bed, is of mud principally. Capt Clark, who was up this stream about three miles, informed me that it continued about the same width, that it's current was gentle and it appeared navigable for perogues it meanders through an extensive, fertile, and beautifull vally as far as could be seen about N. 30° W. there was but one solitary tree to be seen on the banks of this river after it left the bottom of the Missouri. the water of this river is clear, with a brownish yellow tint. here the highlands recede from the Missouri, leaving the vally formed by the river from seven to eight miles wide, and rather lower then usual. This stream my friend Capt. C. named Marthas river.¹

Courses and distances of the 29th of April.

	Miles
N. 45° W. to a point of woodland on Lar ^d side opposite to a high bluff on Star ^d	3.
West. to a point of woodland Star ^d opposite to a bluff	2.
N. 80. W. along the Star ^d point opposite a high sharp bluff	1. ½
N. 45. W. to a point of woodland Lar ^d opposite to a bluff	2.
N. 55. W. to a point of woodland Lar ^d opposite to a bluff	3.
N. 65. W. to a bluff point on Star ^d side	1. ¼
S. 30 W. to the upper point of the high timber on the Lar ^d side in a bend of the river	3

¹ In the MS. here follows a line afterward crossed out, "in honour of Miss M.," followed by another initial which cannot be deciphered — but in Clark's entry, *post*, we read, "in honor to the Celebrated M. F." This river is now known as the Big Muddy. — Ed.



WINTER VILLAGE OF THE MINNARRES

S. 85 W.	to a point of woodland on Star ^d opposite a bluff	1½
N. 55. W.	to the commencement of a bluff on Star ^d side, passing a sand point at 2½ miles on Lar ^d side	3.½
S. 75. W.	to a point of woodland on Lar ^d passing the point of a sandbar on Star ^d , the river making a deep bend to the South	1.½
S. 75. W.	to the entrance of a (<i>Marthys</i>) river in a bend on Star ^d where we encamped for the night. this stream we call [blank space in MS.]	3.
		<hr/> 25

[Clark:]

29th of April Monday 1805

Set out this morning at the usual hour. the wind is moderate & from the N.E. had not proceeded far eer we Saw a female & her faun of the Bighorn animal on the top of a Bluff lying, the noise we made allarmed them and they came down on the side of the bluff which had but little slope being nearly perpendicular, I directed two men to kill those anamals, one went on the top and the other man near the water they had two shots at the doe while in motion without effect, Those animals run & Skiped about with great ease on this declivity & appeared to prefer it to the leavel bottom or plain. Cap^t Lewis & one man walk^d on shore and he killed a yellow Bear & the man with him wounded one other, after getting the flesh of the bear on bord which was not far from the place we brackfast, we proceeded on Saw 4 gangus of buffalaw and great numbers of antelopes in every direction also saw Elk and several wolves, I walked on Shore in the evening & killed a Deer which was so meager as to be unfit for use. The hills contain more coal, and has a greater appearance of being burnt that [than] below, the burnt parts appear on a parrilel with the stratiums of coal, we came too in the mouth of a Little river on the S.S. which is about 50 or 60 yards from banks to bank, I was up this Stream 3 miles it continues its width and glides with a gentle current, its water is about 15 yards wide at this time, and appears to be navagable for canoes &c^t it meanders through a butifull & extencive vallie as far as can be Seen about N 30° W. I saw only a single tree in this fertile

vallie The water of the River is clear of a yellowish colour, we call this river Martheys river in honor to the Selebrated M.F. Here the high land widen from five to Eight miles and much lower than below. Saw several of the big horn animals this evening. The Wolves distroy great numbers of the antilopes by decoying those animals singularly out in the plains and prosueing them alternety, those antelopes are curious and will approach any thing which appears in motion near them &c

		Course & Distance the 29 th of April
		miles
N. 45° W	3	to a point of wood land on the L ^d Side ops ^d to a high Bluff on the Star ^d Side
West	2	to a wood land on the St ^d Side ops ^d a Bluff
N. 80° W.	1 1/2	on the St ^d point, a high Sharp bluff
N. 45° W.	2	to a point of wood land on the L. Side, a high bluff opposit on the S.S.
N. 55° W.	3	to a point of timbered land on the Lard Side a Bluff on the S. Side
N. 65° W	1 1/4	to a Bluff point on the Star ^d Side.
S. 30° W.	3	to the upper point of a high timber on the L. Side in a lard bend of the river
S. 85° W.	1 1/4	to a p ^t of timber on Star ^d S ^d ops ^d a bluff
N. 55° W.	3 1/2	to the commencement of a bluff on S.S. pass ^r a sand p ^t at 2 1/2 miles on the Lar ^d S ^d
S. 75° W.	1 1/2	to a point of wood land on the passing a sand bar the river makeing a Deep bend to the South
N. 75° W.	3 25	to the enterence of a river on the Star ^d Side in a bend, where we encamped for the night.

[Lewis:]

Tuesday April 30th. 1805.

Set out at sunrise. the wind blew hard all last night, and continued to blow pretty hard all day, but not so much, as to compell us to ly by. the country as usual is bare of timber; the river bottoms are level and fertile and extensive, but possess but little timber and that of an indifferent quality even of it's kind; principally low cottonwood, either too small for build-

ing, or for plank, or broken and dead at top and unsound in the center of the trunk. saw great quantities of game as usual. Cap^t Clark walked on shore the greater part of the day, the Interpreter, Charbono and his Indian woman attended him. past some old Indian lodges built of drift wood; they appear to be of antient date and not recently inhabited. I walked on shore this evening and killed a buck Elk, in tolerable order; it appeared to me to be the largest I had seen, and was therefore induced to measure it; found it five feet three inches from the point of the hoof, to the top of the sholders; the leg and hoof being placed as nearly as possible in the same position they would have been had the animal been standing.

Courses and distances of 30th April.

	Miles
S. 15° W. to a point of timbered land on the Star ^d side passing a sand point at $\frac{3}{4}$ of a M ^e Lar ^d	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
S. 22. W. to the upper point of the high timber in the center of a bend Lar ^d side at the commencement of a bluff	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
S. 85. W. to a point of timbered land on Star ^d side opposite to a bluff.	1.
S. 75. W. to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend on Lar ^d side.	. $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 40. W. to the point of a sandbar on the Lar ^d side, passing a willow point at two miles and a large sandbar on Star ^d	5.
S. 40. W. to a point of woodland on Star ^d opposite to a bluff on Lar ^d the river making a considerable bend on Lar ^d side	3 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 70. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side, passing, at the commencement of this course, a large sand Island in the Lar ^d bend.	3.
S. 25. W. to the upper part of the high timber on the Lar ^d side.	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
West. to a point of high timber on the Lar ^d side, a large sand island in the bend to the Star ^d side.	3 $\frac{1}{2}$
N. 80. W. to a point of high woods on the Lar ^d side opposite to which we encamped on a sandbar Star ^d side ¹	1
	Miles 24.

¹ At the present town of Brockton, Mont. — Ed.

[Clark:]

30th of April Tuesday 1805

The wind blew hard from the N E all last night, we Set out at Sunrise the wind blew hard the greater part of the day and part of the time favourable, we did not lie by to day on account of the wind. I walked on Shore to day our interpreter & his squar followed, in my walk the squar found & brought me a bush something like the currunt, which she said bore a delicious froot and that great quantitis grew on the Rocky Mountains. This shrub was in bloom has a yellow flower with a deep cup, the froot when ripe is yellow and hangs in bunches like cherries, Some of those berries yet remained on the bushes. The bottoms above the mouth of the last river is extencive level & fertile and covered with indifferent timber in the points, the upland appear to rise gradually, I saw Great numbers of antelopes, also scattering Buffalow, Elk, Deer, wolves, Gees, ducks & Crows. I Killed 2 Gees which we dined on to day. Cap^l Lewis walked on Shore and killed an elk this evening, and we came too & camped on the S.S. the cuntry on both sides have a butifull appearance.

Course & Distance the 30th of April

	miles	
S. 15° W.	2 ½	to a point of timbered land on the S ^d Side passed a sand point at ¾ of a mile L.S.
S. 22° W.	1 ½	to the upper point of the high timber on the L ^d Side in a bend a Bluff on the Lar ^d
S. 85° W.	1	to a point of timbered land on the St ^d Side opposit to a bluff on the Lard Side
S. 75° W.	½	to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend to the Lar ^d Side
N. 40° W.	5	to a point of a Sand bar on the Lar ^d Side passing a Willow point at 2 miles, and a large Sand bar on S.S.
S. 40° W.	3 ½	to a point of wood land on St ^d Side opposit to a Bluff on the L. Side the [river] making a considerable bend L.S
N. 70° W.	3	to a point of wood land on the Lar ^d Side passing at the commencement of this course a large sand Island in the Lar ^d bend.

1805] YELLOWSTONE TO MUSSELSHELL

S. 25° W.	2½	miles to the upper part of a high timber on the Lar ^d Side
West	3½	to a point of high timber on the Lar ^d Side a large sand Island in the bend to the St ^d Side.
N. 80° W	$\frac{1}{24}$	to a point of high woods on the Larboard Side

[Lewis:]

Wednesday May 1st 1805.

Set out this morning at an early [hour], the wind being favourable we used our sales which carried us on at a good pace untill about 12 OC^s when the wind became so high that the small canoes were unable to proceed one of them which seperated from us just befor the wind became so violent, is now lying on the opposite side of the river, being unable to rejoin us in consequence of the waves, which during those gusts run several feet high. we came too on the Lar^d shore in a handsome bottom well stocked with cottonwood timber; here the wind compelled us to spend the ballance of the day. we sent out some hunters who killed a buffaloe, an Elk, a goat and two beaver. game is now abundant. the country appears much more pleasant and fertile than that we have passed for several days; the hills are lower, the bottoms wider, and better stocked with timber, which consists principally of cottonwood, not however of large size; the under-growth willow on the verge of the river and sandbars, rose bushes, red willow and the broad leafed willow in the bottom lands; the high country on either side of the river is one vast plain, intirely destitute of timber, but is apparently fertile, consisting of a dark rich mellow looking lome. John Shields sick today with the rheumatism. Shannon killed a bird of the plover kind. weight one pound. it measured from the tip of the toe, to the extremity of the beak, 1. foot 10. Inches; from tip to tip of wings when extended 2 F. 5 I.; Beak 3 5, inches; tale 3½, inches; leg and toe 10 In^s the eye black, piercing, prominent and moderately large. the legs are flat thin, slightly imbricated and of a pale sky blue colour, being covered with feathers as far as the mustle extends down it, which is about half of it's

length. it has four toes on each foot, three of which, are connected by a web, the fourth is small and placed at the heel about the $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch up the leg. the nails are black and short, that of the middle toe is extremely singular, consisting of two nails the one laping on or overlaying the other, the upper one somewhat the longest and sharpest. the tale contains eleven feathers of equal length, & of a bluish white colour. the boddy and underside of the wings, except the large feathers of the 1st & 2nd joints of the same, are white, as are also the feathers of the upper part of the 4th joint of the wing and part of those of the 3rd adjacent thereto. the large feathers of the 1st or pinion and the 2nd joint are black; a part of the larger feathers of the 3rd joint on the upper side and all the small feathers which cover the upper part of the wings are black, as are also the tuft of long feathers on each side of the body above the joining of the wing, leaving however a stripe of white between them on the back. the head and neck are shaped much like the grey plover, and are of a light brickdust brown; the beak is black and flat, largest where it joins the head, and from thence becoming thinner and tapering to a very sharp point, the upper chap being $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch the longest turns down at the point and forms a little hook. the nostrils, which commence near the head are long, narrow, connected and parallel with the beak; the beak is much curved, the curvature being upwards in stead of downwards as is common with most birds; the substance of the beak precisely resembles whalebone at a little distance, and is quite as flexable as that substance. their note resembles that of the grey plover, tho' is reather louder and more varied, their habits appear also to be the same, with this difference; that it sometimes rests on the water and swims which I do not recollect having seen the plover do. this bird which I shall henceforth stile the *Missouri plover*, generally feeds about the shallow bars of the river, to collect it's food which consists of [blank space in MS.], it immerces it's beak in the water and throws it's head and beak from side to side at every step it takes.¹

¹ The avocet (*Recurvirostra Americana*). — Ed.

1805] YELLOWSTONE TO MUSSELSHELL

Courses and distances of this day

N. 88° W.	to the upper point of some high timber in a bend on the Star ^d side	Miles 1 1/2
South.	to the upper point of a timbered bottom Lar ^d S ^d	2
S. 26° W.	to a bluff on the Lar ^d side	1 1/2
S. 60° W.	to a single tree on a point Lar ^d side.	1.
West.	to a point of woodland Lar ^d side.	2.
S. 60° W.	to a point of woodland just beneath the upper point of an elevated plane on Star ^d side. one mile short of which we encamped on the Lar ^d	2
		<hr/> 10.

[Clark:]

May the 1st Wednesday 1805.

We set out at sun rise under a stiff Breeze from the East, the morning cool & cloudy. one man J. Shields sick with rhumetism. one of the men (Shannon) shot a Gull or pleaver, which is about the Size of an Indian hen, with a Sharp pointed bill turning up & 4 Inches long, the head and neck of a light brown, the breast, the under feathers of the 2nd and 3rd joint of the wings, the Short feathers on the upper part of the 3rd joint of the wings, down the back the rump & tail white. The large feathers of the 1st joints of the wing the upper feathers of the 2^d joints of the wings, on the body on the joints of the wing and the bill is black. the legs long and of a skie blue. The feet webed &c. This fowl may be properly stiled the Missouri Pleaver. the wind became verry Hard and we put too on the L. Side, as the wind continued with some degree of violence and the waves too high for the Canoes we were obliged to stay all day

Course & Distance 1st of May

	^{miles}	
N. 88° W.	1 1/2	to the upper point of some high timber in a bend to the St ^d Side
South	2	to the upper part of a timber L ^d Side
S. 26° W.	1 1/2	to a Bluff on the Lar ^d Side
S. 60° W.	1	to a Single tree on a point [on] the Lar ^d Side
West	2	to a point [of] wood land Lar ^d Side
S. 60° W.	2	to a wood at the upper part of an elevated plain on the S. Side, one mile short of which we camped
	<hr/> 10	

[Lewis:]

Thursday May 2nd 1805.

The wind continued violent all night nor did it abate much of it's violence this morning, when at daylight it was attended with snow which continued to fall untill about 10 A.M. being about one inch deep, it formed a singular contrast with the vegetation which was considerably advanced. some flowers had put forth in the plains, and the leaves of the cottonwood were as large as a dollar. sent out some hunters who killed 2 deer 3 Elk and several buffaloe; on our way this evening we also shot three beaver along the shore; these anamals in consequence of not being hunted are extreemly gentle, where they are hunted they never leave their lodges in the day, the flesh of the beaver is esteemed a delecacy among us; I think the tale a most delicious morsal, when boiled it resembles in flavor the fresh tongues and sounds of the codfish, and is usually sufficiently large to afford a plentiful meal for two men. Joseph Fields one of the hunters who was out today found several yards of scarlet cloth which had been suspended on the bough of a tree near an old indian hunting cam[p], where it had been left as a sacrefice to the deity by the indians, probably of the Assinniboin nation, it being a custom with them as well as all the nations inhabiting the waters of the Missouri so far as they are known to us, to offer or sacrefice in this manner to the deity wat-ever they may be possessed off which they think most acceptable to him, and very honestly making their own feelings the test of those of the deity offer him the article which they most prize themselves. this being the most usual method of we[r]shiping the great sperit as they term the deity, is practiced on interesting occasions, or to produce the happy eventuation of the important occurances incident to human nature, such as relief from hungar or mallady, protection from their enemies or the delivering them into their hands, and with such as cultivate, to prevent the river's overflowing and distroying their crops &c. s[a]crefices of a similar kind are also made to the deceased by their friends and relatives. the are was very piercing this evening the [water] friezed on the oars as they rowed. the wind dying at 5.P.M. we set out.

Courses and distance 2nd May.

S. 70° E.	to the upper point of the timber on the Lar ^d side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the Lar ^d side at $\frac{1}{4}$ of a mile	2
S. 10° E.	to a point of wood land on the Star ^d side	$\frac{1}{2}$
S. 30° W.	to a point of low timber on the Lar ^d side, a little above which on the Star ^d side, we encamped, having passed some wider fertile bottoms and beautiful high level plains	2
		<u>4 $\frac{1}{2}$</u>

every thing which is incomprehensible to the indians they call *big medicine*, and is the operation of the presents [presence — ED.] and power of the *great spirit*. this morning one of the men shot the indian dog that had followed us for several days, he would steal their cooked provision.

[Clark:]

May 2nd Thursday 1805

The wind blew verry hard all the last night, this morning about sunrise began to Snow, (The Thermomt^r at 28. above 0) and continued untill about 10 oClock, at which time it ceased, the wind continued hard untill about 2 P.M. the Snow which fell to day was about 1 In deep, a verry extraodernarey climate, to behold the trees Green & flowers spred on the plain, & Snow an inch deep. we Set out about 3 oClock and proceeded on about five $\frac{1}{2}$ miles and encamped on the St^d Side, the evening verry cold, Ice freesing to the Ores. I shot a large beaver & Drewyer three in walking on the bank, the flesh of those animals the party is fond of eating &c.

Course & Distance 2^d May

S. 70° E.	2 miles to the upper point of the timber on the Lar ^d Side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the L.S. at a quarter of a mile	
S. 10° E.	$\frac{1}{2}$ mile to a point of wood Land on the Starboard Side	
S. 30° W.	2 miles to a point of Low timber on the Lar ^d Side a little above which on the Starboard Side we encamped	
		4 $\frac{1}{2}$
	2 deer and 3 Elk killed	
	[361]	

[Lewis:]

Friday May 3^d. 1805.

The morning being very cold we did not set out as early as usual; ice formed on a kettle of water $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch thick. the snow has melted generally in the bottoms, but the hills still remain covered. on the lar^d side at the distance of 2 miles we passed a curious collection of bushes which had been tyed up in the form of a fascine [fascine — ED.] and standing on end in the open bottom it appeared to be about 30 feet high and ten or twelve feet in diameter, this we supposed to have been placed there by the Indians, as a sacrifice for some purpose. The wind continued to blow hard from the West but not so strong as to compel us to ly by. Capt Clark walked on shore and killed an Elk which he caused to be butch[er]ed by the time I arrived with the party, here we halted and dined being about 12 OC^k our usual time of halting for that purpose. after dinner Capt. Clark pursued his walk, while I continued with the party, it being a rule which we had established, never to be absent at the same time from the party. the plains or high lands are much less elevated than they were, not being more than from 50 to 60 feet above the river bottom, which is also wider than usual being from 5 to 9 M^l in width; traces of the ancient beds of the river are visible in many places through the whole extent of this valley. since the hills have become lower the appearance of the stratas of coal burnt hills and pumice stone have in a great measure ceased; I saw none today. we saw vast quantities of Buffaloe, Elk, deer principally of the long tale kind, Antelope or goats, beaver, geese, ducks, brant and some swan. near the entrance of the river mentioned in the 10th course of this day, we saw an unusual number of Porcupines from which we determined to call the river after that animal, and accordingly denominated it *Porcupine river*.¹ this stream discharges itself into the Missouri on the Star^d side 2000 miles above the mouth of the latter, it is a beatifull bold runing stream, 40 yards wide at it's entrance; the water is transparent, it being the first of this discription that I have yet seen discharge itself into the Mis-

¹ Now Poplar River; the name Porcupine is in our day applied to a branch of Milk River. — ED.

souri; before it enters a large sand bar through which it discharges itself into the missouri its banks and bottom are formed of a stiff blue and black clay; it appears to be navigable for canoes and perogues at this time and I have no doubt but it might be navigated with boats of a considerable size in high water. its banks appear to be from 8 to ten feet high and seldom overflow; from the quantity of water furnished by this river, the appearance of the country, the direction it pursues, and the situation of its entrance, I have but little doubt but it takes its source not far from the main body of the Suskashawan river, and that it is probably navigable 150 Miles; perhaps not very distant from that river. should this be the case, it would afford a very favorable communication to the Athebaskay country, from whence the British N.W. Company derive so large a portion of their valuable furs. Capt. Clark who ascended this river several miles and passed it above where it entered the hills informed me on his return that he found the general width of the bed of the river about one hundred yards, where he passed the river the bed was 112 yards wide, the water was knee deep and 38 yard in width; the river which he could observe from the rising grounds for about 20 miles, bore a little to the East of North. there was a considerable portion of timber in the bottom lands of this river. Capt Clark also met with limestone on the surface of the earth in the course of his walk. he also saw a range of low mountains at a distance to the W of N, their direction being N.W. the country in the neighbo[rhood] of this river, and as far as the eye can reach, is level, fertile, open and beatifull beyond discription. $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile above the entrance of this river a large creek falls in which we called *2000 Mile Creek*. I sent Rubin Fields to examine it, he reported it to be a bold runing stream, its bed 30 yards wide. we proceeded about 3 miles above this creek and encamped on the Star^d shore. I walked out a little distance and met with 2 porcupines which were feeding on the young willow which grow in great abundance on all the sandbars; this animal is exceedingly clumsy and not very watchfull I approached so near one of them before it perceived me that I touched it with

my espartoon. found the nest of a wild goose among some driftwood in the river from which we took three eggs. this is the only nest we have met with on driftwood, the usual position is the top of a broken tree, sometimes in the forks of a large tree but almost invariably, from 15 to 20 feet or upwards high.

Courses and distances May 3^d 1805.

	Miles
N. 50° W. to a point of high timber in a bend Star ^d	¾
S. 65° W. to a point of high timber in the center of a bend on Lar ^d side	2¼
N. 40. W. to a point of woodland Star ^d side	1.
N. 55° W. to some dead timber in a Star ^d bend	2½
South to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Lar ^d side.	3
S. 80° W. to a point of woodland Star ^d side	½
S. 85° W. to the commencement of the timber on the Lar ^d side in a bend	1¼
North. to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star ^d , passing a sand point at ½ mile on Lar ^d	1½
S. 65° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side.	½
S. 75° W. to a point of woodland on the Star ^d side, at the entrance of a large river on the Star ^d side, called Porcupine R.	1¾
S. 45° W. to the high timber on the lar ^d side, passing the entrance of 2000 mile Creek at ¼ of a mile on Lar ^d side.	3.
N. 40° W. to some high timber on the Star ^d side, just above an old channel of the river on the Star ^d where we encamp ^d	½
	18½

[Clark:]

May 3rd Friday 1805

we Set out reather later this morning than usual owing to weather being very cold, a frost last night and the Therm^l stood this morning at 26 above 0. which is 6 degrees b[e]low freeeing. the ice that was on the Kettle left near the fire last night was ¼ of an inch thick. The snow is all or nearly all off the low bottoms, the Hills are entireley covered; three of our party found in the back of a bottom 3 pieces of scarlet one

brace in each, which had been left as a sacrifice near one of their
 sweet houses, on the L.S. we passed to day a curious collection
 of bushes tied up in the shape of *faccene* about 10 feet diameter,
 which must have been left also by the natives as an offering to
 their medison which they [are] convinced protected or gave
 them relief near the place, the wind continued to blow hard
 from the West, altho not sufficiently so to detain us. I walked
 on shore and killed an Elk & had him buchered by the time
 the Perogus came up which was the usial time of dineing.
 The high lands are low and from 5 to 9 miles apart and there
 is evident marks of the bead [bed] of the river having been
 changed frequently but little appearance of the coal & burnt
 hills to day. Great numbers of Buffalow, Elk, Deer, antelope,
 beaver, Porcupins, & water fowls seen to day, such as, Geese,
 ducks of dif. kinds, & a few Swan. I continued my walk on
 shore after dinner, and arrived at the mouth of a river on the
 S^t Side, which appeared to be large, and I concluded to go up
 this river a few miles to examine it accordingly I set out
 North 1 mile thro wood or timbered bottom, 2 miles through
 a butifull leavel plain, and 1 mile over a high plain about 50
 feet higher than the bottom, & came to the little river, which
 I found to be a butifull clear Stream of about 100 yds from
 bank to bank, (I waded this river at the narrowest part and
 made it 112 steps from bank to bank and at this place which
 was a kind of fording place the water was near Knee deep,
 and 38 steps wide, the bottom of a hard stiff Black clay, I
 observed a Great perportion of timber in the bottoms of this
 river as far as I could See which was to the East of N. 18 or
 20 miles, it appears to be navigable at this time for canoes,
 and from appearances must be navigable a long distance for
 Perogus & boats in high water. This river we call *Porcupines*
 from the great number of those anamals found about it's
 mouth. a Short distance above about $\frac{1}{4}$ mile and on the
 Lar^d Side a large Creek falls in, which R. Fields went to
 examine & reports that it is a bold running stream 30 yds
 wide as this creek is 2000 miles up the Missouri we call it
 the 2000 mile Creek, we proceeded on 3 miles & camped on
 the S.S. here I joined Cap^t Lewis who had in my absence

walk^d on the upper Side of Porcupine River for some distance. This river from its size & quantity of water must head at no great distance from the Saskashawan on this river I saw emence herds [of] Elk & Buffalow & many deer & Porcupine. I also saw the top of a mountain which did not appear verry high to the West of N. & bore N W. I saw on the high land limestone & pebble. The cuntry about the mouth of this river and as far as the eye can reach is butifull open cuntry. The greater part of the snow is melted.

Course & Distance 3^d of May 1805

	mile	
N. 50° W	$\frac{3}{4}$	to a point of high timber on the St ^d Side in a bend
S. 65° W.	$2\frac{1}{4}$	to a point of high timber on the L ^d S ^d about the middle of a bend L.S.
N. 40° W	1	mile to a point of wood land St ^d Side
N. 55° W	$2\frac{1}{2}$	miles to some dead timber in St ^d bend
South	3	to the upper part of a timber in a bend to the Lar ^d Side
N. 80° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	to a p ^t of wood land St ^d Side
S. 85° W.	$1\frac{1}{4}$	to the commencement of a timber on the Lar ^d Side in a bend
North	$1\frac{1}{2}$	to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star ^d Side passing a Sand point at $\frac{1}{2}$ a mile
S. 65° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	to a point of wood Land on the L ^d Side
S 75° W.	$1\frac{3}{4}$	to a point of wood land on the St ^d Side at the mouth of a large river on the St ^d Side
S 45° W	3	m. to a high timber on the Lar ^d Side passed the mouth of 2000 mile Creek at $\frac{1}{4}$ of a mile on the Lard Side
N. 40° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	to some high timber on the S. Side just above an old channel of the river St ^d Side. encamped
	<hr style="width: 100px; margin-left: 0;"/>	
	$18\frac{1}{2}$	

[Lewis:]

Saturday May 4th 1805.

We were detained this morning untill about 9 OC^k in order to repara the rudder irons of the red perogue which were broken last evening in landing; we then set out, the wind hard against us. I walked on shore this morning, the weather was more plesant, the snow has disappeared; the frost seems to have effected the vegetation much less than could have been

expected the leaves of the cottonwood the grass the box alder willow and the yellow flowering pea seem to be scarcely touched; the rosebushes and honeysuckle seem to have sustained the most considerable injury. The country on both sides of the Missouri continues to be open level fertile and beautiful as far as the eye can reach which from some of the eminences is not short of 30 Miles. the river bottoms are very extensive and contain a much greater proportion of timber than usual; the fore part of this day the river was bordered with timber on both sides, a circumstance which is extremely rare and the first which has occurred of any thing like the same extent since we left the Mandans. in the after part of the day we passed an extensive beautiful plain on the Star^d side which gradually ascended from the river. I saw immense quantities of buffalo in every direction, also some Elk deer and goats; having an abundance of meat on hand I passed them without firing on them; they are extremely gentle the bull buffalo particularly will scarcely give way to you. I passed several in the open plain within fifty paces, they viewed me for a moment as something novel and then very unconcernedly continued to feed. Cap^t. Clark walked on shore this evening and did not rejoin us until after dark, he struck the river several miles above our camp and came down to us. we saw many beaver some [of] which the party shot, we also killed two deer today. much sign of the brown bear. passed several old Indian hunting camps in the course of the day one of them contained two large lodges which were fortified with old driftwood and fallen timber; this fortification consisted of a circular fence of timber laid horizontally lapping on and over laying each other to the height of 5 feet. these pounds are sometimes built from 20 to 30 feet in diameter and covered over with the trunks and limbs of old timber. the usual construction of the lodges we have lately passed is as follows. three or more strong sticks the thickness of a man's leg or arm and about 12 feet long are attached together at one end by a with of small willows, these are then set on end and spread at the base, forming a circle of ten twelve or 14 feet in diameter; sticks of driftwood and fallen timber of convenient size are now placed with one end

on the ground and the other resting against those which are secured together at top by the with and which support and give the form to the whole, thus the sticks are laid on untill they make it as thick as they design, usually about three ranges, each piece breaking or filling up the interstice of the two beneath it, the whole forming a conic figure about 10 feet high with a small apperture in one side which answers as a door. leaves bark and straw are sometimes thrown over the work to make it more complete, but at best it affords a very imperfect shelter particularly without straw which is the state in which we have most usually found them.

Courses and distances of the 4th of May

S. 80° W. to a point of timber on the Star ^d side	3.
S. 72° W. to a point of woodland on the Star ^d side river wide and filled with sandbars	5.
S. 50° W. to the mouth of a small creek in a deep bend on Lar ^d side, a sand Island opposite	1 ½
N. 10° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side passing a Star ^d point at 1 ¼ miles	3.
S. 45° W. to a willow point on the Star ^d side, the river making a considerable bend to the N. an open plain on the Star ^d	4
S. 70° W. to a point of timbered land on the Star ^d where we encamped.	4
Miles	18. ½

At noon the sun was so much obscured that I could not obtain his maridian Altitude which I much wished in order to fix the latitude of the entrance of Porcupine river. Joseph Fields was very sick today with the disentary had a high fever I gave him a doze of Glauber salts, which operated very well, in the evening his fever abated and I gave him 30 drops of laudnum.

[Clark:]

May 4th Saturday 1805

The rudder Irons of our large Perogue broke off last night, the replacing of which detained us this morning untill 9 oClock at which time we set out the wind a head from the



JUNCTION OF THE YELLOW RIVER NEAR BENTON, MISSOURI

west, The country on each side of the Missouri is a rich high and butifull the bottoms are extencive with a great deal of timber on them all the fore part of this day the wood land bordered the river on both Sides, in the after part a butifull assending plain on the St^d Side we camped on the St^d Side a little above. we passed a Small Creek on the L. Side near which I saw where an Indian lodge had been fortified many year past. Saw great numbers of anamals of different kinds on the banks, I saw the black martin to day. in the evening I walk^d on Shore on the St^d Side & Struck the river Several miles above our camp & did not get to Camp untill some time after night. we have one man Sick. The river has been falling for several days passed; it now begins to rise a little, the rate of rise & fall is from one to 3 inches in 24 hours

Course & Distance the 4th of May

S. 80°	W.	3,	to a point of timber on the Star ^d Side.
S. 72°	W.	5.	to a point of wood land on the St ^d Side. river wide & many sand bars
S. 50°	W.	1½	to the mouth of a creek in a Deep bend to the Lard. Side. a sand Is ^d ops ^d
N 10°	W.	3.	to a point of wood Land on the Lar ^d Side passing a point S Side 1¼ miles.
S 45°	W.	4	to a willow point on the Star ^d Side, the river making a considerable [bend] arround to the North an open plain
S. 70°	W.	1½	to a point of timbered land on the Star ^d Side, where we encamped
		miles	18

[Lewis:]

Sunday May 5th 1805

A fine morning I walked on shore untill after 8 A.M. when we halted for breakfast and in the course of my walk killed a deer which I carried about a mile and a half to the river, it was in good order. soon after seting out the rudder irons of the white perogue were broken by her runing fowl on a sawyer, she was however refitted in a few minutes with some tugs of raw hide and nales. as usual saw a great quantity of

game today; Buffalo Elk and goats or Antelopes feeding in every direction; we kill whatever we wish, the buffalo furnish us with fine veal and fat beef, we also have venison and beaver tales when we wish them; the flesh of the Elk and goat are less esteemed, and certainly are inferior. we have not been able to take any fish for some time past. The country is as yesterday beatifull in the extreme. saw the carcases of many Buffaloe lying dead along the shore partially devoured by the wolves and bear. saw a great number of white brant also the common brown brant, geese of the common kind and a small species of geese which differ considerably from the common canadian goose;¹ their neck head and beak are considerably thicker shorter and larger than the other in proportion to it's size, they are also more than a third smaller, and their note more like that of the brant or a young goose which has not perfectly acquired his notes, in all other respects they are the same in colour habits and the number of feathers in the tale, they frequently also associate with the large geese when in flocks, but never saw them pared off with the large or common goose. The white brant associate in very large flocks, they do not appear to be mated or pared off as if they intended to raise their young in this quarter, I therefore doubt whether they reside here during the summer for that purpose. this bird is about the size of the common brown brant or two thirds of the common goose, it is not so long by six inches from point to point of the wings when extended as the other; the beak head and neck are also larger and stronger; their beak legs and feet are of a redish or flesh-coloured white. the eye is of moderate size, the puple of a deep sea green incircled with a ring of yellowish brown. it has sixteen feathers of equal length in the tale; their note differs but little from the common brant, their flesh much the same, and in my opinion preferable to the goose, the flesh is dark. they are entirely of a beatifull pure white except the

¹ Of these birds, the small goose described is scientifically known as *Bernicla hutchinsi*; the Canadian goose is *B. canadensis*. The brown brant is *B. brenta*, and the white brant *Chen hyperboreus*; the last-named bird goes much farther north to breed. — ED.

large feathers of the 1st and second joints of the wings which are jut [jet] black. form and habits are the same with the other brants; they sometimes associate and form one common flock. Capt Clark found a den of young wolves in the course of his walk today and also saw a great number of those animals; they are very abundant in this quarter, and are of two species the small wolf or burrowing dog of the praries are the inhabitants almost invariably of the open plains; they usually associate in bands of ten or twelve sometimes more and burrow near some pass or place much frequented by game; not being able alone to take a deer or goat they are rarely ever found alone but hunt in bands; they frequently watch and seize their prey near their burrows; in these burrows they raise their young and to them they also resort when pursued; when a person approaches them they frequently bark, their note being precisely that of the small dog. they are of an intermediate size between that of the fox and dog, very active fleet and delicately formed; the ears large erect and pointed the head long and pointed more like that of the fox; tale long and bushy; the hair and fur also resembles the fox tho' is much coarser and inferior. they are of a pale redish brown colour. the eye of a deep sea green colour small and piercing. their tallons are reather longer than those of the ordinary wolf or that common to the atlantic States, none of which are to be found in this quarter, nor I believe above the river Plat.¹ The large wolf found here is not as large as those of the atlantic states. they are lower and thicker made shorter legged. their colour which is not effected by the seasons, is a grey or blackish brown and every intermediate shade from that to a creen [cream] coloured white; these wolves resort [to] the woodlands and are also found in the plains, but never take refuge in the ground or burrow so far as I have been able to inform myself. we scarcely see a gang of buffaloe without observing a parsel of those faithfull shepherds

¹ A description of the coyote (*Canis latrans*), followed by that of the common wolf (*C. lupus occidentalis*). Coles thinks that Lewis is mistaken as to the habitat of the latter: "in some of its varieties, it was found in most parts of North America, though it is now exterminated from settled regions" (*L. and C.*, i, p. 29*). — Ed.

on their skirts in readiness to take care of the mamed wounded. the large wolf never barks, but howls as those of the atlantic states do. Cap^t Clark and Drewyer killed the largest brown bear this evening which we have yet seen. it was a most tremendous looking animal, and extremely hard to kill notwithstanding he had five balls through his lungs and five others in various parts he swam more than half the distance across the river to a sandbar, & it was at least twenty minutes before he died; he did not attempt to attack, but fled and made the most tremendous roaring from the moment he was shot. We had no means of weighing this monster; Capt. Clark thought he would weigh 500 lb^s for my own part I think the estimate too small by 100 lb^s he measured 8. Feet $7\frac{1}{2}$ Inches from the nose to the extremety of the hind feet, 5 F. $10\frac{1}{2}$ In^s around the breast, 1 F. 11. I. around the middle of the arm, & 3.F. 11.1. around the neck; his tallons which were five in number on each foot were $4\frac{3}{4}$ Inches in length. he was in good order, we therefore divided him among the party and made them boil the oil and put it in a cask for future use; the oil is as hard as hogs lard when cool, much more so than that of the black bear. this bear differs from the common black bear in several respects; it's tallons are much longer and more blunt, it's tale shorter, it's hair which is of a redish or bey brown, is longer thicker and finer than that of the black bear; his liver lungs and heart are much larger even in proportion with his size; the heart particularly was as large as that of a large Ox. his maw was also ten times the size of black bear, and was filled with flesh and fish. his testicles were pendant from the belly and placed four inches assunder in seperate bags or pouches. this animal also feeds on roots and almost every species of wild fruit.

The party killed two Elk and a Buffaloe today, and my dog caught a goat, which he overtook by superior fleetness, the goat it must be understood was with young and extremely poor. a great number of these goats are devowered by the wolves and bear at this season when they are poor and passing the river from S.W. to N.E. they are very inactive and easily taken in the water, a man can out swim them with great

ease; the Indians take them in great numbers in the river at this season and in autumn when they repass to the S.W.

Courses and distances of May 5 th 1805.		Miles
S. 70° W.	to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the Star ^d shore, opposite a low bluff	3
S. 72° W.	to some high timber on a projecting point on the Star ^d side opposite a po ^t Lar ^d passing the upper part of Isl ^d at 2 miles	2 ½
S. 30° W.	to a point of woodland on the Star ^d opposite a low bluff on Lar ^d side	2 ½
N. 48° W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar ^d side	2 ¼
N. 45° W.	to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lar ^d point	1 ¾
South.	to a willow point on the Star ^d side short of which we encamped on Star ^d	
		5
		17.

Point of observation N^o 9.

On the Lar^d shore near the fourth course of this day, observed meridian Altitude of the ☉: L. L. with Octant by the back observation to be 68° 47'; the latitude deduced from which is 45° 46' 5''6. I do think this observation can be depended on as it was reather late before I could commence it, the sun was about to decline or perhaps had declined a few minutes.

[Clark:]

5th of May Sunday 1805

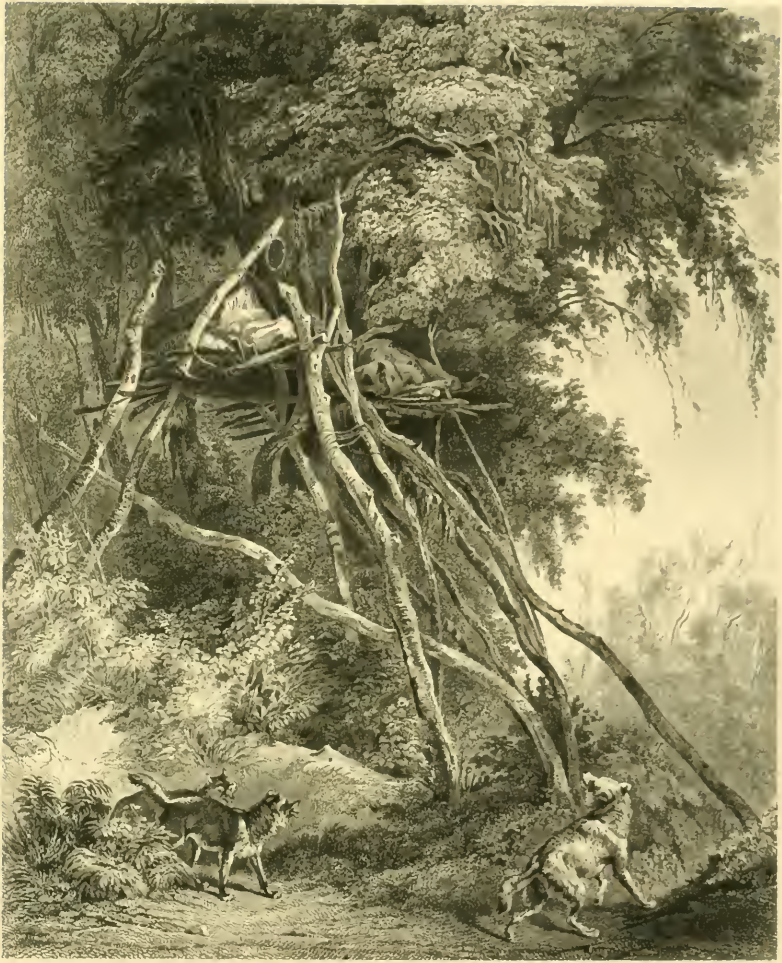
We set out verry early and had not proceeded far before the rudder Irons of one of the Perogus broke which detained us a short time Cap^t Lewis walked on shore this morning and killed a Deer, after brackfast I walked on shore Saw great numbers of Buffalow & Elk Saw also a Den of young wolves, and a number of Grown Wolves in every direction, the white & Grey Brant is in this part of the Missouri I shot at the white brant but at so great a distance I did not kill, The Countrey on both sides is as yesterday handsom & fertile. The river rising & current Strong & in the evening we saw a Brown or Grisley beare on a sand beech, I went out with one man Geo Drewyer & Killed the bear, which was verry large and a turrible looking animal, which we found verry hard to

kill we Shot ten Balls into him before we killed him, & 5 of those Balls through his lights This animal is the largest of the carnivorous kind I ever saw we had nothing that could way him, I think his weight may be stated at 500 pounds, he measured 8 feet $7\frac{1}{2}$ In^s from his nose to the extremity of the Toe, 5 feet $10\frac{1}{2}$ In^s around the breast, 1 foot 11 Ins: around the middle of the arm, 3 feet 11 In^s around the neck his tallents was 4 Inches & $\frac{3}{4}$ long, he was [in] good order, and appeared verry different from the common black bear in as much as his tallents (*talon or nail*) were blunt, his tail short, his liver & lights much larger, his maw ten times as large and contained meat or flesh & fish only. we had him skined and divided, the oile tried up & put in Kegs for use. we camped on the Sta^d Side, our men killed three Elk and a Buffalow to day, and our Dog cought an antilope a fair race, this animal appeared verry pore & with young.

Course & Distance 5th of May

S. 70° W.	3	miles to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the S ^d Side opposit a low bluff.
S. 72° W.	$2\frac{1}{2}$	miles to some high timber on a projecting point on the Sta ^d Side ops ^d a p ^t L.S., passed the Is ^{ds} at 2 miles
S. 30° W.	$2\frac{1}{2}$	miles to a point of wood land on the Star ^d Side ops ^d a low Bluff L. Side
N. 48° W	$2\frac{3}{4}$	miles to a point of wood land on the Lard Side
N. 45° W.	$1\frac{3}{4}$	miles to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lar ^d point
South	5	miles to a willow point on the Star ^d Side short of which we encamped
miles	17	

END OF VOL. I



TOMBS OF ASSIMBOITY INDIANS ON TREES

